From the transcript of
*The Endeavour Journal of Joseph Banks*,
25 Aug 1768-12 Jul 1771, 2 Vols

downloaded from the web site of the
Mitchell Library, State Library of New South Wales,
Sydney, Australia

and

ordered in the page layout of the original journal
held at the Mitchell Library.
(includes figures, lists, notes,
page captions, and margin notes)

arranged by B.P. Sandford
1998.

Distributed with permission of
Mitchell Library, State Library of New South Wales

Adobe Portable Document Format
Acrobat 3.0 compatible
25. After having waited in this place ten days, the ship, and everything belonging to me, being all that time in perfect readiness to sail at a moments warning, we at last got a fair wind, and this day at 3 O’Clock in the even weigd anchor, and set sail, all in excellent health and spirits perfectly prepard (in Mind at least) to undergo with Cheerfullness any fatigues or dangers that may occur in our intended Voyage.

26. Wind still fair, but very light breezes; saw this Even a shoal of those fish which are particularly callld *Porpoises* by the seamen, probably the *Delphinus Phocaena* of Linnaeus, as their noses are very blunt.

27. Wind fair and a fine Breeze; found the ship to be but a heavy sailer, indeed we could not Expect her to be any other from her built, so are obligd to set down with this Inconvenience, as a nescessary consequence of her form; which is much more calculated for stowage, than for sailing.

28. Little wind today; in some sea water, which was taken on board to season a cask, observed a very minute sea Insect, which Dr Solander describd by the name of *Podura marina*. In the Evening very calm; with the small
28. casting net took several specimens of *Medusa Pelagica*, whose different motions in swimming amus’d us very much: among the appendages to this animal we found also a new species of *oniscus*. We took also another animal, quite different from any we had Ever seen; it was of an angular figure, about 3 inches long and one thick, with a hollow passing quite through it. On one end was a Brown spot, which might be the stomach of the animal.

Four of these, the whole number that we took, adherd together when taken by their sides; so that at first we imagind them to be one animal, but upon being put into a glass of water they very soon separated and swam briskly about the water.

29. Wind foul: Morning employd in finishing the Drawings of the animals taken yesterday till the ship got so much motion that Mr Parkinson could not set to his Pencil; in the Evening wind still Fresher so much as to make the night very uncomfortable.

30. Wind still Foul, ship in violent motion, but towards Evening much more quiet:
30. Now for the first time my Sea sickness left me, and I was sufficiently well to write.

31. Wind Freshend again this morn; observ’d about the Ship several of the Birds call’d by the seamen Mother Careys chickens, Procellaria Pelagica Linn, which were thought by them to be a sure presage of a storm, as indeed it prov’d, for before night it blew so hard as to bring us under our Courses, and make me very sea sick again.

SEPTEMBER 1768

1. Still Blew, Mother Careys chickens had not yet left us, but towards night wind slackened so that we were again tolerably easy; by our reckoning we must make some part of the coast of Spain before Morning.

2. This Morn about 7 saw the coast of Gallicia between Cape Ortegal and Finisterre; weather tolerably fine, so that we could use the casting net, which brought up two kinds of Animals, different from any before taken; they came up in Clusters, both sorts indifferen[t]ly in each Cluster, tho much fewer of the Horned ones than of the others. They seem to [be]
2. two species of one genus, but are not at all reducible to any genus hitherto describd.

3. Blew fresh this morn. We were employd all day in describing the animals taken yesterday; found them to be of a new genus and of the same with that taken on the 28 of August Calld the genus *Dagysa* from the likeness of one Species to a Gem. Towards Even wind fair Settled tolerably fine.

4. Calm today; we were employd in fishing with the casting net and were fortunate in taking several specimens of *Dagysa saccata* adhering together, sometimes to the Lengh of a yard or more, and shining in the water with very beautifull Colours; but another insect which we took today was possest of more beautiful Colouring than any thing in nature I have ever seen, hardly excepting gemms. He is of a new genus and callld [?]
of which we took another species who had no beauty to boast, but this which we called _opalinum_ shone in the water with all the splendor and variety of colours that we observe in a real opal; he livd in the Glass of salt water in which he was put for examination several hours; darting about with great agility, and at every motion shewing an almost infinite variety of changeable colours. Towards the Evening of this day a new phaenomenon appeard, the sea was almost coverd with a small species of Crabb's _Cancer depurator_ of Linnaeus, floating upon the surface of the water, and moving themselves with tolerable agility, as if the surface of the water and not the bottom was their Proper station. Here again as usual our casting net was of great service, we took with it as many as were wanted, and went to bed well contented with the Produce of the day.
5. I forgot to mention yesterday that two birds were caught in the rigging, who probably had come from Spain, as we were not then distant above 5 or 6 Leagues, this morning another was caught, and brought to me, but so weak that it dyed in my hand almost immediately; they were all three of the same species, and not describd by Linnaeus, we calld them *Motacilla velificans*, as they must be sailors who would venture themselves aboard a ship which is going round the world. But to make some balance to our good fortune now become too prevalent, a misfortune happned this morn, equaling almost the worst which our enemies could have wishd; the morn was calm and Richmond employd in searching for what should appear on the surface of the water, a shoal of dagysa’s were observd and he Eagar to take some of
5. them threw the cast-net fastned to nothing but his wrist, the string slippd from him and the net at once sunk into the profound never more to torment its inhabitants but Leaving us for some time intirely without a resource, plenty of animals coming past the ship, and no netts but in the hold, stowd under so many things that it was impossible even to hope for their being got out today at least, however an old hoop net was fastned to a fishing rod, and with it one new speces of Dagysa was caught and calld Lobata.

6. Fine and calm this morn, immence numbers of Dagysa Lobata floated by, and were taken by our new contrivance, some of them in clusters as many as 14 together, united by a Lobe on the underside. Towards the Middle of the day the sea was almost coverd with dagysa’s of different kinds
among which two entirely new ones were taken, *rostrata* and *strumosa*, but neither of these were observd hanging in clusters as most of the other Species had been, indeed whether from the badness of the new machine or their scarcity I cannot say; only one of *rostrata* and two of *strumosa* were taken. It is now time to give some account of the genus of Dagysa, of which there are already six species taken, all agreeing in many particulars vastly well but chiefly in this very singular one, that they have a hole at each end, which holes Communicate by a tube, often as large as the body of the animal, by the help of which they swim with some degree of activity when seperated from each other, for several sorts are seen most generaly Joind together, *gemma* more particularly which adhere in clusters of some hundreds irregularly shap’d; in the midst of
these were generally found a few specimens of *cornuta*, from which circumstance we may judge that they are very nearly allied.

It seems singular that no naturalist before this time should have taken notice of these animals as they abound so much where the ship now is, not twenty Leagues from the coast of Spain; from hence however great hopes may be formed, that the inhabitants of the deep have been but little examined, and as Dr Solander and myself shall have probably greater opportunity in the course of this voyage than any one has had before us, it is a very encouraging circumstance to hope that so large a field of natural history has remained almost untrodden, even till this time, and that we may be able from this circumstance alone (almost unthought of when we embarked in the undertaking) to add considerable
This Evening a large quantity of the *Carcinium opalinum* which may be called opal insect came under the ships stern, making the very sea appear with uncommon beauty, their colours appearing with vast brightness even at the depth of two or three fathoms, tho they are not more than three lines long and one broad.

7. On examining the Dagysa’s which were taken yesterday, several small animals were found Lodgd in the hollow parts of their bodys, and some in the very substance of the flesh, which seems to be their food, as many of the dagysas were full of scars which had undoubtedly been the Lodgment of these animals some time before; upon a minute inspection they proved to be animals not to be class’d under any of Linnaeus’s genera.
tho nearly related to *Oniscus*, from which Circumstance the name of *Onidium* was given to the new genus, and to them was added an animal taken the 28th of August and mentiond in the second Page by the name of *Oniscus Macrophthalmos*.

In one circumstance these insects differ from any hitherto describd, and in that they all three agree, viz the having two Eyes joind together under one common membrane, without the least distinction or division between them, which circumstance alone seems a sufficient reason for constituting a new genus.

The wind was now fair and we went very pleasantly on towards our destind port, tho rather too fast for any natural Enquiries, for my own part I could well dispence with a much slower pace, but I fancy few in the ship, Dr Solander excepted, are of the same opinion, tho I beleive Every body envyed our easy contented countenances during the last
7. calm, which brought so much food to our pursuits.

8. Blew fresh today, but the wind was very fair so nobody complain'd, nor would they was the wind much stronger, so impatient has the Calms and foul wind made every body; by the reckoning we were off Cape St Vincent so shall soon bid adieu to Europe for some time.

10. Since the northerly wind began to blow it has not varied a point, the Sea is now down and we go pleasantly on at the rate of about 6 Knotts; could any contrivance be found by the help of which new subjects of natural history could be taken Dr Solander and myself would be Quite happy, we are forc’d to be content; three days are now pass'd since any thing has been taken or indeed seen, except a stray turtle who swam by the ship about noon, but was left far behind before any instrument by which he might have been taken could
10. possibly have been got to hand.

Today for the first time we dind in Africa, and took our leave of Europe for heaven alone knows how long, perhaps for Ever; that thought demands a sigh as a tribute due to the memory of freinds left behind and they have it; but two cannot be spard, twold give more pain to the sigher, than pleasure to those sighd for. Tis Enough that they are rememberd, they would not wish to be too much thought of by one so long to be seperated from them and left alone to the Mercy of winds and waves.

11. Wind fair but rather slackend upon us, nothing however was observ’d, we expected to have made Porto Santo tonight but did not.

12. This morn Porto Santo and Madeira were in full veiw, they were seen at day break, indeed we had a little overshot them; as the wind was rather scanty we had however no doubt of fetching in at night.
12. Accordingly at ten tonight came to an anchor in Fonchiale bay.

13. This morn about 11 the product boat (as it is callld by English Sailors) which is the boat from the oficers of health who must give leave before any ships crew can land, came on board, and we immediately went on shore in the town of Fonchiale, the Capital of the Island, situate in Latitude 32:40 North, calld so from the Fennel which grows in plenty upon the rocks in its neighbourhood and which is callld Funcho in the Portugese Language. Here we immediately went to the house of the English Consul Mr Cheap, one of the first merchants in the place, where we were receivd with uncommon marks of civility; he insisted upon our taking possession of his house and living intirely with him during our stay which we did and were by him furnishd
13. with every accommodation that we could wish. Leave was procured by him for us to search the Island for whatever natural productions we might find worth taking notice of, people were also employd to procure for us fish and shells which we could not have spard time to have collected ourselves, horses and Guides were also got for Dr Solander and myself to carry us to any part of the Island which we might chuse to visit. But our very short stay which was only five Days inclusive made it impossible to go to any distance, so we contented ourselves with collecting as much as we could in the neighbourhood of the town, never going above three miles from it during our whole stay.

The season of the year was undoubtedly the worst for both plants and insects, being the hight of the vintage, when nothing is
13. green in the countrey but just on the verge of small brooks, by which these vines are waterd; we made shift however to collect specimens of several plants, &c: of which a catalogue follows as it is not worth while to mix them in the Journal, where they would take up much room.

**Daily Log continues on Log page *33**

[Account of Madiera]

The five days which we remained upon the Island were spent so exactly in the same manner, that it is by no means nescessary to divide them, I shall therefore only say, that in general we got up in the Morn, went out on our researches, retur[n]d to dine, and went out again in the Evening; one day however we had a visit from the Governor, of which we had notice before and were obligd to stay at home, so that unsought honour lost us very near the whole
14-17.

day, a very material part of the short time we were allowd to stay upon the Island: we however contrivd to revenge ourselves upon his excellency, by an Electrical machine which we had on board; upon his expressing a desire to see it we sent for it ashore, and shockd him full as much as he chose.

While at this place we were much indebted to Dr Heberden, the cheif Physitian of the Island, and brother to the Physitian of that name at London; he had for many years been an inhabitant of the Canaries and this Island, and had made several observations cheifly philosophical, some however were Botanical, describing the trees of the Island: of these he immediately gave us a copy, together with such specimens as he had in his possession, and indeed spard no pains to get for us such living
specimens of such as could be procurd in flower.

We tried here to learn what Species of wood it is which has been imported into England, and is now known to Cabinet makers by the name of Madeira mahogany, but without much success, as we could not learn that any wood had been exported out of the Island by that name; the wood however of the tree called here Vigniatico, *Laurus indicus* Linn. bids fair to be the thing, it being of a fine grain and brown like mahogany, from which it is difficult to distinguish it, which is well shewn at Dr Heberdens house where in a bookcase vigniatico and mahogany were placed close by each other, and were only to be known asunder by the first being not quite so dark coloured as the other.
14-17.

As much of the Island as we saw shewed evidently the signs of a volcano having some time or other possibly produced the whole; as we saw no one peice of stone which did not evidently shew signs of having been burnt, some very much, especially the sand which was absolutely cinders. Indeed we did not see much of the countrey, but we were told that the whole was like the specimen we saw of it.

When you first aproach it from seaward it has a very beautifull appearance, the sides of the hills being intirely coverd with vineyards almost as high as the eye can distinguish, which make a constant appearance of verdure tho at this time nothing but the vines remaind green, the grass and herbs being intirely burnt up except near the
sides of the rills of water by which the vines are waterd, and under the shade of the vines themselves; tho these very few Species of plants were in perfection the greater part being burnt up.

The people here in general seem to be as idle, or rather uninformed a set as I ever yet saw; all their instruments, even those with which their wine, the only article of trade in the Island is made, are perfectly simple and unimproved. Their method is this: the Grapes are put into a square wooden vessel, of dimensions according to the size of the vineyard to which it belongs, into which the servents get (having taken off their stockins and Jackets) and with their feet and Elbows squeeze out as much of the Juice
14-17.

as they can; the stalks &c are then collected, tyed together with a rope and put under a square peice of wood which is pressd down by a Leaver, to the other end of which is fastned a stone that may be raisd up at pleasure by a screw; by this way and this only they make their wine, and by this way probably Noah made his when he had newly planted the first vineyard after the general destruction of mankind and their arts; tho it is not impossible that he might have used a better, if he rememberd the ways he had seen us’d before the flood.

It was with great difficulty that some (and not as yet all) of them were persuaded not long ago to graft their vines and by this means bring all the fruit of a vineyard to be of one sort, tho before the vine which it producd had been spoild by different sorts of bad ones which were
nevertheless sufferd to grow, and taken as much care
of as the best, because they added to the quantity of
the wine. Yet were they perfectly acquainted with the
use of grafting, and constantly practisd it on their
chestnut trees, by which means they were brought to
bear sooner much than they would have done had they
been allowd to remain unimprovd.

Wheel carriages I saw none in the Island of any sort or
kind, indeed their roads are so intolerably bad that if
they had them they could scarcely make use of them:
they have however some horses and mules, wonderfully clever in traveling upon them,
notwithstanding which they bring to town every drop
of wine they make upon mens heads, in vessells made
of goat skins. The only imitation of a carriage they
have, is a board
14-17.

a little hollowed out in the middle, to one end of which a pole is tied by a strap of whitleather, the whole machine coming about as near the perfection of a European cart as an Indian canoe does to a boat with this they move the pipes of wine about the town. Indeed I suppose they would never have made use even of this had not the English introduced vessels to put their wine in which were rather too large to be carried by hand, as they used to do every thing else.

A speech of their late governor is recorded here, which shews in what light they are looked upon even by the Portugese, (themselves I believe far behind all the rest of Europe, except possibly the Spaniards): it was very fortunate said he that this Island was not Eden
in which Adam and Eve dwelt before the fall, for had it been so the inhabitants here would never have been induc’d to put on Cloaths; so much are they resolvd in every particular to follow exactly the paths of their forefathers.

Indeed were the people here only tolerably industrious, there is scarcely any Luxury which might [not] be produc’d that either Europe or the Indies afford, owing to the great difference of Climate observable in ascending the hills; this we experienc’d in a visit to Dr Heberden, who lives about two miles from the town, we left the Thermometer when we set out at 74 and found it there at 66. Indeed the hills produce almost spontaneously vast plenty of Wallnutts, chestnutts, and apples, but in the town you find some few plants
natives of both the Indies, whose flourishing state put it out of all doubt that were they taken any care of they might have any quantity of them. Of these I mention some: the Banana tree, (*Musa sapientum* Linn.) in great abundance; the guava (*Psidium pyriferum* Linn.) not uncommon; the pine apple, *Bromelia ananas* Linn. of this I saw some very healthy plants in the provadores Garden; Mango, *Mangifera indica* Linn. one plant also of this in the same garden Bearing fruit every year; Cinnamon, *Laurus cinnamomum* Linn. very healthy plants of this I saw on the top of Dr Heberdens house at Fonchiale, which had stood there through the winter without any kind of Care having been taken of them. These without mentioning any more seem very sufficient to shew that the tenderest plants might be cultivated here without
any trouble; yet the indolence of the inhabitants is so great, that even that is too much for them; indeed the policy of the English here is to hinder them as much as possible from growing any thing themselves except what they find their account in taking in exchange for Corn, tho the people might with much Less trouble and expence grow the corn themselves. What corn grows here, which indeed is not much, is of a most excellent quality, Large graind, and very fine; their meat also is very good, mutton, pork, and beef more especialy, of which what we had on board the ship was agreed by all of us to be very little inferior to our own; tho we Englishmen value ourselves not a little on our peculiar excellence in that production. The fat of this was white like the fat of mutton, yet the
14-17. meat Brown, and coarse graind as ours, tho much smaller.

The town of Fonchiale is situated at the Bottom of the Bay, very ill Built, tho larger than the size of the Island seems to deserve. The houses of the bettermost people are in general large but those of the poorer sort very small, and the streets very narrow and uncommonly ill pavd. The Churches here have abundance of ornaments, cheifly bad pictures and figures of their favourite saints in lac’d cloaths; the Convent of the Franciscans indeed which we went to See had very little ornament; but the neatness with which those fathers kept everything was well worthy of commendation, especialy their infirmary, the contrivance of which deserves to be taken particular notice of; it was a long room, on one side of which were windows, and an altar for
the convenience of administering the sacrament to the sick; on the other were the wards, each just capable of containing a bed, and lined with white duch tiles; to every one of these was a door communicating with a gallery which ran parallel to the great room, so that any of the sick might be supplied with whatever they wanted without disturbing their neighbours.

In this Convent was a curiosity of a very singular nature; a small chapel whose whole lining, wainscote, and ceiling, was entirely composed of human bones, two large thigh bones across, and a skull in each of the openings. Among these was a very singular anatomical curiosity, a skull in which one side of the Lower jaw was perfectly and very firmly fastened to the upper by an ossification, so that the man whoever he was must have lived
some time without being able to open his mouth, indeed it was plain on the other side that a hole had been made by beating out his teeth, and in some measure damaging his Jaw bone, by which alone he must have receivd his nourishment.

I must not leave these good fathers without mentioning a thing which does great credit to their civility, and at the same time shews that they are not bigots to their religion: we visited them on Thursday Even just before their supper time; they made many apologies that they could not ask us to sup, not being prepar'd; but said they, if you will come tomorrow, notwishstanding it is fast with us, we will have a turkey roasted for you.

There are here, beside friarys, 3 or 4 houses of nunns. To one of these (Sa’nta Clara) we went, and indeed the
ladies did us the honour to express great pleasure in seeing us there; they had heard that we were great Philosophers, and expected much from us, one of the first questions that they askd was, when it would thunder; they then desird to know if we could put them in a way of finding water in their convent, which it seems they were in want of; but notwithstanding our answers to these questions were not quite so much to the purpose as they expected, they did not at all cease their civilities, for while we stayd, which was about half an hour, I am sure there was not the fraction of a second in which their tongues did not go at an uncommonly nimble rate.

It remains now that I should say something of the Island in general, and then take my leave of Madeira till
some other opportunity offers of visiting it again, for
the climate is so fine that any man might wish it was
in his power to live here under the benefits of English
laws and liberty.

The hills here are very high, much higher than any one
would imagine, Pico Ruevo the highest is 5068 ft
which is much higher than any land that has been
measured in Great Britain; indeed as I hinted before
the whole Island has probably been the production of
a Volcano, notwithstanding which its fertility is
amazing, all the sides of the hills are coverd with
vines to a certain hight, above which are woods of
chestnut and pine of immense extent; and above them
forests of wild timber of kinds not known in Europe,
which amply supply the inhabitants with whatever
they may want. Among these some there were whose
flowers we
14-17.

were not able to procure and consequently could not settle their Genera, particularly those call’d by the Portugese *Mirmulano* and *Pao branco*, both which, and especially the first, from the Beauty of their leaves promise to be a great ornament to our European gardens.

The inhabitants here are suppos’d to be about 80,000; and from the town of Fonchiale (its custom house I mean) the King of Portugal receives 20000 pounds a year, after having paid the Governor and all expenses of every kind, which may serve to shew in some degree the consequence which this little Island is of to the crown of Portugal; was it in the hands of any other people in the world its value might easily be doubled, from the excellence of its climate capable of bearing any kind of crop, a circumstance
14-17.

which the Portugese do not make the least advantage of.

The Coin current here is intirely Spanish, for the Balance of trade with Lisbon being in disfavour of this Island all the Portugese money naturaly goes there, to prevent which Spanish money is allowd to pass: it is of three denominations, Pistereens, Bitts, and 1/2 bitts; the first worth about 1 shilling, the 2nd 6 pence, the third 3 pence; they have also Portugese money of Copper, but so scarce that I did not in my stay there see a single peice.
Muraena guttata Mss Merca Lus.
- - - - - Anguilla Linn.
Trachinus Draco Linn. Aranha Lus.
Coryphaena Novacula Linn. Papagaya Lus.
Scorpaena Patriarcha Mscr.
- - - - - Chorrista Mscr Memino do coro Lus.
Pleuronectes Rhomboides Mscr Solha Lus.
Chaetodon luridus Mss Castanpeta Lus.
Sparus sarghus Linn. Sargho.
- - - - griseus Mss.
- - - - mundus Mss.
Callyodon rubiginosus Mss Budiam Lus.
Labrus lunaris Linn. Peixe verde Lus.
Sciena angustata Mss. Bocavoens Lus.
Perca decorata Mss.
- - - Imperator Mss Emperador Lus.
Scomber scombrus Linn.
- - - - Trachurus Linn.
N.B. the mark of a star * in the margin signifies that the plant so marked is not wild but cultivated a cross + that for want of fructification the plant could not certainly be determined.

**Monandria**
- Canna indica *Linn*. Bananeira brava. Conteira preta
- *Amomum Zingiber* *Linn*.
- Callitriche verna *Linn*.

**Diandria**
- *Nyctanthes sambac* *Linn*. flore pleno
- *Jasminum officinale* *Linn*.
- *— grandiflorum* *Linn*.
- + Olea europaea *Linn*.
  - Veronica anagallis *Linn*.
  - Verbena officinalis *Linn*.
- *Rosmarinus officinalis* *Linn*.
- *Salvia officinalis* *Linn*.

**Triandria**
- Gladiolus communis *Linn*. Alho brabo
- Iris
- Cyperus rotundus *Linn*.
- - - - - flavescens *Linn*.
- Scirpus setaceus *Linn*.
- *Saccharum officinarum* *Linn*.
- Phalaris canariensis *Linn*.
- - - - - oblongata *Mss*.
- Panicum Junceum. *Mscr. Grama*
Panicum glaucum *Linn.*
- - - - - sanguinale *Linn.*
- - - - - Crus Corvi *Linn.* Milhaa Lus.
Milium paradoxum *Linn.*
Agrostis linearis *Mscr.*
- - - - - bromoides *Linn.*
- - - - - sanguinalis *Mscr.*
- - - - - pallida *Mscr.*
- - - - - sylvatica *Linn.*
Poa annua *Linn.*
Briza minor *Linn.*
- - - maxima *Linn.* Xucalheira Lus.
Cynosurus indicus *Linn.*
- - - - - echinatus *Linn.*
Festuca sylvatica *Mscr.* Bromus pinnatus *Linn.*
Bromus geniculatus *Linn.*
Avena fatua *Linn.* Balanco *Lus.*
- - - - elatior *Linn.*
- - - - nodosa *Linn.*
Arundo donax *Linn.* Canavieira *Lus.*
Aristida Adscentionis *Linn.*
Lolium perenne *Linn.*
- - - - temulentum *Linn.*
Hordeum murinum *Linn.*
Triticum repens *Linn.* Forscapa *Lus.*
Polycarpon tetraphyllum *Linn.* Saboira *Lus.*
September 1768   Plants of Madeira

Tetrandria
Alyssum angustifolium Fig. pict. Mscr. Malforada Lus.
Sherardia arvensis Linn.
Galium mollugo Linn. Var. angustifolia
- - - - - vesiculosum Mscr.
Plantago lanceolata Linn.
- - - - - media Linn. Tanxage Lus.
- - - - - albicans Linn.
Eleagnus angustifolia Linn. Oleveira Lus.
Ilex Perado Mss.Perado Lus. fig. pict.
+ - - Azevinho Mss. Azevinho Lus. fig. pict.
   Sagina procumbens Linn.

Pentandria
Heliotropium europaeum Linn.
Myosotis scorpoides palustris Linn.
- - - - - arvensis Linn.
Cynoglossum cheirifolium Linn. Masarogueira Lus.
- - - - - - officinale Linn.
Echium vulgare Linn.
Anagallis arvensis Linn.
Convolvulus flexuosus Mss.
* - - - - - - Batatas Linn. Batata Lus.
   - - - - - - arvensis Linn. corriola Lus.
   - - - - - - altheoides Linn.
Campanula erinus Linn.
Lonicera caprifolium Linn.
Mirabilis Jalapa Linn. Boninas Lus.
Datura Stramonium Linn. Bufarcira Lus.
Hyocyamus albus *Linn.* Maimondro *Lus.*
Nicotiana Tabacum *Linn.* Erva santa *Lus.*
* Solanum tuberosum *Linn.*
  - - - - - nigrum *Linn.*
  - - - - - pseudocapsicum *Linn.* Pimenteira *Lus.*
  - - - - - Lycopersicum *Linn.* Tomatos *Lus.*
Capsicum frutescens a *Linn.*
Heberdenia excelsa *Mscr.* Aderno *Lus.* fig. pict.
Lycium barbarum *Linn.* Espinheiro *Lus.*
* Mangifera indica *Linn.* Mangoira *Lus.*
* Ribes rubrum *Linn.*
* - - - grossularia *Linn.*
  Hedera helix *Linn.*
* Vitis vinifera *Linn.*
  Achyranthes aspera Sicula *Linn.*
* Celosia cristata *Linn.*
* Gardenia florida *Linn.*
  Chenopodium murale *Linn.*
  - - - - - - - - - - album *Linn.*
  - - - - - - - - - - ambrosoides *Linn.*
Caucalis arvensis Miss.
Daucus visnaga *Linn.* Bsnaga *Lus.*
Ammi majus *Linn.* Margaca *Lus.*
Anethum Foeniculum *Linn.* Funcho *Lus.*
Apium petroselinum *Linn.*
Rhus ceriaria *Linn.* Sumagre *Lus.*
Sambucus obulus *Linn.*
Alsine media *Linn.*
Linum perenne *Linn.*
Hexandria
* Bromelia Ananas Linn.
  Amaryllis belladonna Linn.
  Allium oleraceum Linn. Sabolinho bracco Lus.
* - - - - cepa Linn.
  Lilium candidum Linn.
  Dracaena Draco Linn.
  Aloe perfoliata Linn.
* Agave Americana Linn.
  Juncus Effusus Linn.
    - - - - tenax Mscr.
  Meadia repens Mscr. Erva branca. Erva terra Lus. fig. pict.
  Rumex aquaticus Linn. Azeda Lus.
    - - - - scutatus Linn. Labassa Lus.

Octandria
  Tropaeolum minus Linn.
  Vaccinium elevatum Mss. Uveira Lus.
  Erica cinerea? Linn.
  Polygonum aviculare Linn. Sempre noiva Lus.
    - - - - - - Hydropiper Linn. Polgueira Lus.
    - - - - - - Barbatum Linn.

Erneandria
  Laurus nobilis Linn.
    - - - - indica Linn.
    - - - - nitida Mscr. fig. pict.
    - - - - foetens Mscr. fig. pict. Til. Lus.
* - - - - cinnamomum Linn.
Decandria
Cassia bicapsularis Linn.
  Ruta graveolens Linn. Arvuda Lus.
  Clethra arborea Mscr. Folhada Lus. fig. pict.
  Dianthus prolifer Linn.
* - - - - - cariophyllus Linn.
  Cucubalus Behen Linn. Estralho Lus.
  Silene gallica Linn.
  - - - - inaperta Linn.
  Stellaria graminea Linn.
  Cotyledon umbelicus Q[ ] Linn.
  Oxalis corniculata Linn. Pedepassaro } Lus.
  Bolsa de pastor }
  Cerastium viscosum Linn.
* Phytolacca decandra Linn.

Dodecandria
Portulacca oleracea Linn. Baldruegas Lus.
  Lythrum Hyssopifolia Linn.
  Agrimonia eupatoria Linn.
  Reseda luteola Linn.
  Euphorbia peplus Linn.
  - - - - - verrucosa Linn. Truirisco Lus.
  Sempervivum arboreum Linn.

Icosandria
  Cactus Ficus indica Linn.
  * Psidium pyriferum Linn.
  * Eugenia Jambos Linn.
    Myrtus communis Lusitanica Linn. Myrto Lus.
  * - - - - tarentina Linn.
  * - - - - pulposa Mss.
Punica Granatum *Linn.*

* Amygdalus persica *Linn.*

* Prunus armenaica *Linn.*

* - - - - cerasus *Linn.*

* Prunus domestica *Linn.*

* Mespilus germanica *Linn.*

* Pyrus communis *Linn.*

* - - - - Malus *Linn.*

* - - - - Cydonia *Linn.*

* Rosa gallica *Linn.* flore albo
  
  Rubus pedatus MSS. Silva *Lus.*

  - - - - fruticosus *Linn.*

* Fragaria vesca *Linn.*

Potentilla reptans *Linn.*


*Polyandria*

Chelidonium majus *Linn.* Seredonia } *Lus.*

Celedonia }

Delphinium consolida *Linn.*

Nigella damascena *Linn.*

* Liriodendrum tulipifera *Linn.*

Ranunculus repens *Linn.* Solda da terra *Lus.*


*Didynamia*

Lavandula pinnata MSS. Criceta de gallo fig. pict.

Sideritis canariensis *Linn.*

Mentha pulegium *Linn.* Poejo *Lus.*

- - - - rotundifolia *Linn.*

Stachys arvensis *Linn.*

Ballota nigra *Linn.*

Clinopodium vulgare *Linn.*
Origanum creticum Linn. Ouregas Lus.
* Thymus vulgaris Linn.
   Melissa calamintha Linn.
   Dracocephalum canariense Linn.
* Ocymum Basilicum Linn.
   Prunella vulgaris Linn.
   Antirrhinum cordatum Mss. fig. pict. Orelhas de gato Lus.
   Serophularia Scorodonia Linn.
   Digitalis purpurea Linn. Tegeira Lus.
* Bignonia radicans Linn.
   Acanthus spinosus Linn.

Tetradynamea
* Lepidium sativum Linn.
   Cochlearia coronopus Linn.
   Sisymbrium Nasturtium Linn. Agriaio Lus.
   Erysimum officinale Linn.
* Brassica oleracea Linn.
* - - - - - - rapa Linn.
* Sinapis alba Linn. Mustarda Lus.
   Isatis tinctoria Linn

Monadelphia
Geranium robertianum Linn. Agulheta Lus.
- - - - - - cicutarium Linn.
Sida Rhombifolia Linn. Bertonha Lus.
Malva rotundifolia Linn. Malva Lus.
- - - - mauritanica Linn.
* Hibiscus rosa sinensis Linn.
Diadelphia
Fumaria officinalis Linn. Molharinha Lus.
Spartium scoparium Linn.
Genista canariensis Linn. Piorno Lus.
* Lupinus albus Linn.
* Phaseolus vulgaris a Linn.
* - - - - - - coccineus Linn.
* Pisum sativum Linn.
   Vicia gracilis Mss.
   Ervum hirsutum Linn. Ervilhata Lus.
   Cicer arietinum Linn.
   Ornithopus perpusillus Linn.
   Scorpiurus vermiculata Linn.
   Psoralea bituminosa Linn. Fudigocos Lus.
   - - - - - - americana Linn.
Trifolium glomeratum Linn.
   - - - - - agrarium Linn.
   - - - - - repens Linn.
   - - - - - Melilotus Italica Linn.
   - - - - - angustifolium Linn. Pesegaja Lus.
   Lotus glaucus Mscr. fig. pict.
   Medicago polymorpha muricata Linn.
   - - - - - lupulina Linn.

Polyadelphia
* Citrus medica Linn.
   - - - Aurantium Linn.
   Hypericun canariense Linn. Sepiao Linn.
   - - - - - - perforatum Linn. Peseguiero Linn.
   - - - - - - humifusum Linn.
   - - - - - - glandulosum Mscr.
   - - - - - - evectum Mscr.
Syngenesia
Picris Echioides Linn. Kapasaya Lus.
Sonchus oleraceus Linn. Peseguito Lus.
Lactuca sativa Linn.
Leontodon nudicaule Mss. Letuba Lus.
Crepis tenuifolia Mss.
Lapsana stellata Linn.
Cicoreum Intybus Linn.
Scolymus hispanicus Linn.
Arctium Lappa Linn.
Carduus pycnocephalus Linn.
Carthamus tinctorius Linn. Cardo brabo Lus.
Carthamus lanatus Linn.
Gnaphalium crassifolium Linn. fig. pict.
- - - - - - - luteo albidum Linn.
Conyza Saxatilis Linn. Murnaneira Lus.
Erigeron canadense Linn.
Senecia viscosus Linn.
* Aster chinensis Linn.
* Tagetes erecta Linn.
   Chrysanthemum segetum Linn.
   Matricaria parthenium Linn. Artemigo Lus.
   Anthemis cotula Linn.
* Helianthus annuus Linn.
   Coreopsis Leucanthema Linn. Malpica } Lus.
   Don Andrera }

Centaurea calcitrapa Linn.
Calendula arvensis Linn.
Lobelia Longifolia Mscr.
Viola odorata Linn. Viola Lus.
* Impatiens balsamina Linn.

* Gynandria
  Passiflora quadrangularis Linn.
* Arum colocasia Linn. Inhame Lus.
  - - - - sagittifolium Linn.
  - - - - pictum Mss. Inhame de Bresil Lus. fig. pict.

Monoecia
Lemna minor Linn.
Zea Mays Linn.
Coix Lacryma Jobi Linn. Conteiras brancas Lus.
Carex muricata Linn.
* Buxus sempervirens Linn.
  Urtica urens Linn.
* Morus nigra Linn.
  Amaranthus hybridus Linn.
  - - - - - - - blitum Linn. Bredos Lus.
Poterium sanguisorba Linn.
Juglans regia Linn.
Fagus castanea Linn.
Pinus pinea Linn. Pinheira
* Cupressus sempervirens Linn.
* Cucurbita lagenaria Linn.
* Cucurbita pepo Linn.
* - - - - - - citrullus Linn.
* Cucumis Melo Linn.
* - - - - Sativus Linn.
Dioecia
Salix purpurea Linn. Veme Lus.
- - - Helix Linn. Seiseiro Lus.
Smilax latifolia Mss. Alegecadela Lus. fig. pict.
Populus alba Linn. Alimo Lus.
Mercurialis ambigua Linn.
* Carica Papya Linn.
  Juniperus oxycedrus Linn.
  Taxus baccata Linn.
* Ruscus androgynus Linn. Alegacam Lus.

Polygamia
Musa sapientum Linn.
Andropogon hirtum Linn.
Holcus halepensis Linn. Scabracha Lus.
- - - - mollis Linn.
Cenchrus setosus Mscr.
Parietaria officinalis Linn. Alfavaca Lus.
* Mimosa Farnesiana Linn.
* Diospyrus Lotus Linn. fig. pict.
* Ficus carica Linn.

Cryptogamia
Equisetum arvense Linn.
+ Osmunda Maderensis Mscr. fig. pict.
  - - - - - - spicant Linn.
Pteris aquilina Linn. Feiteira Lus.
Asplenium adiantum nigrum Linn.
  - - - - - - marinum Linn.
  - - - - - - monanthes Linn. fig. pict.
September 1768   Plants of Madeira

Polypodium Thelypteris Mscr. Acrosticum Th. Linn. fig. pict.
- - - - - - - lineatum Mscr.
- - - - - - - fragile Linn.
Adiantum trapeziforme Linn. Cabreira Lus.
Trichomanes canariense Linn.
Mnium politrichoides Linn.
Hypnum rugosum Mscr.
Jungermannia tamariscifolia Linn.
Lichen articulatus Linn. Barba Lus.
- - - - calicaris Linn.
- - - - digitatus Linn.
Marchantia polymorpha Linn. Patinha Lus.
Lichen geographicus Linn.
Lichen calicaris Linn.
Byssus aurea Linn.
Phoenix dactyfera Linn.

Appendix
Faya Lus.
Pao branco Lus.
Salvia major folio glauco serrato
     Sloane Hist. Jam. p.17 T.3.fig.3
18. This Evening every thing being ready for sea, we went on board, and at 8 o’Clock got under way with a very light breeze.

19. Light Breezes all day, without any event worth writing about.

20. Still almost calm, which gave us an opportunity of taking with the casting nett a most beautifull species of Medusa, of a colour equaling if not exceeding the finest ultramarine; it was describd and calld Medusa azurea.

21. This morn wind foul, saw however some rocks call’d in the old charts Salvages which lay to the northward of the Canarys.

22. No land in sight this morn, towards noon almost calm, many fish were about the ship, but our fishermen could not contrive to catch any of them.

23. This morn we were calld up very early to see the pike of Teneriffe, which now for the first time appeard at a vast distance
23. much above the clouds (I mean those which form a bank near the Horizon); the hill itself was so faint, that no man who was not used to the appearance of land at a great distance could tell it from a cloud, it soon however appeard something clearer and a sketch was made of it.

While we were engagd in looking at the hill a fish was taken which was describ’d and called *Scomber serpens*; the seamen said they had never seen such a one before except the first lieutenant, who rememberd to have taken one before just about these Islands; Sr Hans Sloane in his Passage out to Jamaica also took one of these fish which he gives a figure of,

Vol.1,T.1, f.2.

The Pike continued in sight almost all day, tho sometimes obscurd by the clouds;
23. at sunset however its appearance was most truely elegant, the rays of the sun remaining upon it sometime after it was set and the other land quite Black, and giving it a warmth of colour not to be express’d by painting.

24. This Morn the Pike appeard very plain and immensely above the clouds, as may well be imagin’d by its hight which Dr Heberden of Madeira who has been himself upon it communicated to us, 15,396 feet. The Dr also says that tho there is no eruption of visible fire from it, yet heat issues from the chinks near the top so strongly that a person who putts his hand upon these is scalded; from him we receivd among many other favours some salt which he supposes to be the true natron or nitrum of the ancients, and some native sulphur
24. exceedingly pure, both which he collected himself on the top of the mountain, where large quantities, especialy of the salt, are found on the surface of the Earth.

25. Wind continued to blow much as it had done so we were sure we were well in the trade; now for the first time we saw plenty of flying fish, whose bea[u]ty especialy when seen from the cabbin windows is beyond imagination, their sides shining like burnishd silver; when seen from the Deck they do not appear to such advantage as their backs are then presented to the view, which are dark colourd.

26. Went as usual and as we expect to go these next two months; flying fish are in great plenty about the ship. About one today we crossd the tropick, the night
26. most intolerably hot, the Thermometer standing all night at 78 in the cabbin tho every window was open.

27. About one this morn a flying fish was brought into the cabbin, the first that had been taken; it flew aboard, I suppose chasd by some other fish, or maybe merely because he did not see the ship; at breakfast another was brought, which had flown into Mr Green the Astronomers Cabbin. This whole day we saild at the rate of 7 knotts, sometimes a fathom or two more the wind being rather stronger than it usualy is in the trade.

28. Wind rather slackend; three birds were today about the ship, a swallow, to all appearance the same as our European one, and two motacillas, about night fall one of the latter was taken; about 11 a shoal of Porpoises came about the
28. ship, and the fisgig was soon thrown into one of them but would not hold.

29. This morn calm; employd in drawing and describing the bird taken yesterday, calld it *Motacilla avida*; while the drawing was in hand it became very familiar, so much so that we had a brace made for it in hope to keep it alive; as flies were in amazing abundance onboard the ship we had no fear of plentiful supply of provision.

About noon a young shark was seen from the Cabbin windows following the ship, who immediately took a bait and was caught on board; he provd to be the *Squalus Charcharias* of Linn[aeus] and assisted us in clearing up much confusion which almost all authors had made about that species; with him came on board 4 sucking fish,
29. *echineis remora* Linn. who were preserved in spirit. Notwithstanding it was twelve O’Clock before the shark was taken, we made shift to have a part of him stewd for dinner, and very good meat he was, at least in the opinion of Dr Solander and myself, tho some of the Seamen did not seem to be fond of him, probably from some prejudice founded on the species sometimes feeding on human flesh.

30. This Morn at day break made the Island of Bonavista, one of the Cape Verde Islands: Mr Buchan employd in taking views of the land; Mr Parkinson busy in finishing the sketches made of the shark yesterday.

This Evening the other *Motacilla avida* was brought to us, it differd scarce at all from the first taken, except that
30. it was something larger; his head however gave us some good, by supplying us with near twenty specimens of ticks, which differed but little from the *acarus vicinus* Linn; it was however described and called *acarus Motacilla*.

OCTOBER 1768

1. This Morn Bonetos were in great plenty about the ship, we were called up early to see one that had been struck, found it to be the *Scomber Pelamis* Linn., had a drawing made of it; I confess however that I was a good deal disappointed, expecting to find the animal much more beautifull than it provd, tho its colours were extreemly lively, especially the blue lines on the Back (which equald at least any ultramarine); yet the name, and accounts I had heard from all who had seen them, made me expect an animal
1. of a much greater variety of colour, this consisting of no other than blue lines on the back crossing each other, a gold and purple changeable on the sides, and white with black lines on the bottom of the sides and belly.

After having examind and drawn the animal we proceeded to disect him, and in the course of the operation were much pleasd by the infinite strenght we observd in every part of him, specialy the stomach, the coats of which were uncommonly strong especialy about the sp[h]incter, or extremity by which the digested meat is discharged; this I suppose is intended to crush and render usefull the scales and bones of fishes which this animal must continualy swalow without seperating them from the flesh.

From the inside of its scales we took a small animal who seemd to be a louse
1. (if I may so call it) as it certainly stuck to him and preyd upon the Juices which it extra[c]ted by sucktion, probably much to his disquiet; it provd to be *monoculus piscinus* Linn. which Baster has given a figure of in his *Opera subcessive*, but has by some unlucky accident mistaken the head to be the tail, and the tail the head, and the ovaria for antennae.

In the inside of the fish were also found two animals which preyd upon him, one in his very flesh tho near the membrane which covers the intestines, *Fasciola Pelamines* Mss, the other in the stomach *sipunculus piscium* Mss.

2. This morn two swallows were about the ship, tho we must now be 60 Leagues at least from any land, at night one of them is taken and proved to be *Hirundo domestica* Linn.
3. This morn the other swallow was found dead upon the deck; now for the first time we have lost the trade, and expected calm and squally weather till we shall cross the line.

The trade had now lasted us pretty free from squalls or calms these days it has been in general between but ever since we have been in it the air has been uncommonly damp, every thing more than usualy liable to mould, and all Iron work to rust, the air has seldom been Clear, but a haize in it which was even perceiveable to the human frame.

4. Today quite calm, I went out in a boat and took *dagysa strumosa, medusa porpita*, the same which we before calld asurea, *mimus volutator*, and *cimex* who runns
4. upon the water here in the same manner as *C. Lacustris* does on our ponds in England. Towards even two small fish were taken under the stern, they were following a shirt which was towing and showed not the least signs of fear, so that they were taken with a landing net without the least difficulty. *Balistes monoceros* Linn.

5. Weather pretty good, at night a squall with Lightning and rain, another swallow came to the ship today and was taken with the snippers as soon as he went to roost.

6. Blew fresh this morn with heavy rain; towards noon five swallows came on board and were taken at roosting time, and proved like all we have taken before to be *H. domestica* Linn.

7. This morn calm; went out in the boat
and took what is calld by the Seamen a Portugese man of war, *Holothuria Physalis* Linn; also *Medusa velella L.* *onidium spinosum* Mss, *Diodon Erinaceus* Mss, *dagysa vitrea* Mss, *Helix Janthina* Linn, — *violacea* Mss and *procellaria Oceanica* Mss. The Holothuria proved to be one of the most bea[u]tifull sights I had ever seen, it consisted of a small bladder in shape much like the air bladder of fishes, from the bottom of which descended a number of strings of bright blue and red, some three or four feet in length which if touchd stung the person who touchd them in the same manner as nettles, only much stronger: on the top of this Bladder was a membrane which he turnd either one way or the other as the wind blew to receive it, this was veind with pink in an uncommonly
7. beautifull manner, in short the whole together was one of the most beautifull sights I have seen among the mollusca, tho many of them are beautifull.

The floating shells *H. Janthina* and *violacea* from their particularity deserve also to be mentiond, they are found floating on the top of the water by means of a small cluster of Bubbles filld with air, which are composd of a tenacious slimey substance, not easily parting with its contents; these keep him suspended on the surface of the water and serve as a hiding for his Eggs, and it is probable that he never goes down to the bottom, or willingly comes near any shore, as his shell is of so brittle a construction that few fresh water snails are so thin.

Every shell contains within it about a teaspoonfull of Liquid, which it
7. easily discharges on being touched, this is of a most beautifull red purple colour and easily dies linnen clothes; it may be well worth inquiry whether or not this is the *purpura* of the ancients as the shell is certainly found in the Mediterranean. We have not yet taken a sufficient quantity of the shells to try the experiment, probably we shall do soon.

*Procellaria oceanica* differs very little from *P. pelagica* Linn, but from his place of abode so far south and some small difference in plumage it is more than likely that he is different in species.

8. A fine Breze today; employd in figuring &c. what was taken yesterday.

9. This morn a shark calld us out of our bedds, and was soon hookd, but as soon broke his hold and went off: at noon went out in
9. the boat but found nothing on the surface of the water; on returning home however found on the stern of the ship two new species of *Lepas vittata* and *midas*, they were both sticking to the bottom in company with the *anatifera*, of which there was great abundance. After dinner call'd upon deck by another shark, who had been lately wounded by a harpoon, but he was two cunning after his misfortune to bite at our baits, which we much lamented as he had sucking fish upon him that were quite white, probably a species not yet describ'd.

10. Went out in the boat today, took plenty of *Helix Janthina* and some few of *violacea*, shot the black toed gull of *Penn. Zool*. It had not yet been describ'd according to Linnaeus's system, so call'd it *Larus crepidatus*; its food here seems to be chiefly Helixes
10. which appeared probable at least, on account of its dung being of a lively red colour, much like that which was procur’d from the shells.

I was drove home from this excursion by a very heavy squall of rain, which entirely wetted me through long before it was possible to return to the ship, however I receiv’d no other harm from the ducking than the present inconvenience of being so thoroughly wet. The remainder of today was very squally, with much rain; indeed it has been so ever since we lost the trade, and the people who have been here before say that it is generally so in these latitudes; I can liken it to nothing so much as April in England, when it is very showery, the weather is never certain for two hours, or indeed half the time, tho calms spend much the greatest part of our time in idleness.

11. Today much like yesterday, very squally; saw a dolphin, and admired the infinite
11. beauty of his colour as he swam in the water, but in vain, he would not give us even a chance of taking him.

12. A shark, *squalus carcharias* Linn. taken this morn, and with him two pilot fish; at noon calm, I went out in the boat and took several Blubbers. The pilot fish *Gasterosteus ductor* Linn. is certainly as bea[u]tyfull a fish as can be imagind: it is of a light blue with cross streaks of darker colour; it is wonderful to see them about a Shark, swimming round him without expressing the least signs of fear; what their motive for doing so is I cannot guess as I cannot find that they get any provision by it, or any other emolument, except possibly the company of the shark keeps them free from the attacks of Dolphins or other large fish of prey, who would otherwise devour them.

The blubbers taken today were *Beroe Labiata* and *Marsupialis Mss*, the first of which made a pretty appearance in the water, by
12. reason of its swimmers, which line its sides like fringes, and are of a changeable fire colour; *Callirhoe bivia* Mss, the most lifeless lump of Jelly I have seen, it scarcely seems to be possessd of life but for one or two motions we saw it make.

13. Calm this Morn; a shark was taken, but not one pilot fish attended him, which is rather uncommon as they seldom are without a shoal of from ten to twenty. At noon I went in the boat, and took the Sallee man *Phylloodoce velella* Linn. who is a Sailor tho inferior in size to the Portugese man of war, yet not without its beauty, cheifly from the charming blue of its bottom; its sail is transparent but not moveable, so it trusts itself to the mercy of the winds without being able to turn to windward as the Portugese man of war maybe can? We saw several of the latter today, and observd many small fish under their tentacula who seemd to shelter there as if with its stings it could defend them from large enemies.
14. Calm today but so squally and rainy that I dar’d not venture out with the boat.

15. Ventur’d out today, but found the surface of the water so ruffled that nothing at all floated upon it, I had the good fortune however to see a bird of the shearwater kind which I shot, and it prov’d to be not describd; it was about as large as the common but differd from it in being whiter, especialy about the face: calld it *Procellaria crepidata*, as its feet were like the gulls shot last week, black without but white near the leggs.

A large shoal of fish were all this day under the shipp’s stern, playing about, but refusing to take bait; we however contrivd to take one of them with a fish gigg, which prov’d not describd; it was in make and appearance like a Carp, weighing near two pounds, its sides were ornamented with narrow yellow lines and its finns almost intirely coverd with scales: calld it *Chaetodon cyprinaceus*. 
16. A fine breeze of wind started up last night which held us all day, so I found it impossible to go out in the boat; tonight however to make these 24 hours not entirely unprofitable I had the opportunity of seeing a Phenomenon I had never before met with, a lunar rainbow which appeared about ten O’Clock very faint and almost or quite without colour, so that it could be traced by little More than an appearance which looked like shade on a cloud.

17. This morn went out in the boat but caught no one thing, I had never been before so unfortunate. In the Evening a breeze of wind sprung up from SE by S which makes us hope we had got the S.E. trade.

18. Wind continued to blow fresh so we had little doubt of the reality of yesterdays hopes. This evening trying as I have often (foolishly no doubt) done to exercise myself by playing tricks with two ropes in the Cabbin
18. I got a fall which hurt me a good deal and alarmed me more, as the blow was on my head, and two hours after it I was taken with sickness at my stomach which made me fear some ill consequence.

19. Today thank God I was much better and easd of all apprehensions, the wind continuing fair and I had given over all thoughts of boat expeditions for some time at least.

20. Quite well today, employd in describing and attending the Draughtsmen.

21. Trade continues. Today the cat killd our bird *M. Avida* who had lived with us ever since the 29th of Septr intirely on the flies which he caught for himself; he was hearty and in high health so that probably he might have livd a great while longer had fate been more kind.

22. Trade had got more to the Southward that it usualy had been, which was unlucky for me as
22. I proposd to the Captain to touch for part of a day at least at the Island of Ferdinand Norronha, which he had no objection to if we could fetch it: that however seemd very uncertain. This Evening we saw 6 or 7 large fish of the whale kind which the Seamen calld Grampuses tho I think they were very different from the fish commonly so calld; they were however Certainly of the whale kind and blew throug[h] two? pipes on the top of their heads. They had heads smaller and rounder than those fish in general have and very low back finns and very small tails; thus much was all that I could see as they never came within two cables lengh of the ship.

23. Trade today was still more to the Southward, almost due South, so that we tackd and stood to the eastward lest we should fall in with the coast of Brazil to the Northward of Cape Frio.
24. Wind today as fair as we could wish, ship layd up so well that it renewd our hopes of touching at the Island.

About noon today we experiencd what the Seamen call a white squall, that is a gust of wind which came upon us quite unawares, unattended with a cloud as squalls in general are and therefore took us quite unprepard; it was however very slight so no ill consequence ensued except Mr Parkinson and his potts going to leward, which diverted us more than it hurt him.

25. This morn about 8 O’Clock crossed the Aquinoctial line in about 33 degrees West Longitude from Greenwich, at the rate of four knotts which our seamen said was an uncommonly good breeze, the Thermometer standing at 29. (The Thermometers used in this voyage are two of Mr Birds making after Farenheights scale, which seldom differ above a degree from each other and
25. that not till they are as high as 80, in which case the medium between the two instruments is set down.) This Evening the ceremony of ducking the ships company was performed as always customary on crossing the line, when those who have crossd it before Claim a right of ducking all that have not, the whole of the ceremony I shall describe.

About dinner time a list was brought into the cabin containing the names of every body and thing aboard the ship, in which the dogs and catts were not forgot; to this was affixed a petition, sign’d ‘the ships company,’ desiring leave to examine every body in that List that it might be know[n] whether or not they had crossd the line before. This was immediately granted; every body was then called upon the quarter deck and examind by one of the lieutenants who had crossd, he markd every name either to be duckd or let off according as their qualifications
25. directed. Captn Cooke and Doctor Solander were on the Black list, as were my self my servants and doggs, which I was oblig’d to compound for by giving the Duckers a certain quantity of Brandy for which they willingly excusd us the ceremony.

Many of the Men however chose to be duckd rather than give up 4 days allowance of wine which was the price fixd upon, and as for the boys they are always duckd of course; so that about 21 underwent the ceremony which was performd thus:

A block was made fast to the end of the Main Yard and a long line reved through it, to which three Cross peices of wood were fastned, one of which was put between the leggs of the man who was to be duckd and to this he was tyed very fast, another was for him to hold in his hands and the third was over his head least the rope
25. should be hoisted too near the block and by that means the man be hurt. When he was fastened upon this machine the Boatswain gave the command by his whistle and the man was hoisted up as high as the cross peice over his head would allow, when another signal was made and immediately the rope was let go and his own weight carried him down, he was then immediately hoisted up again and three times served in this manner which was every man's allowance. Thus ended the diversion of the day, for the ducking lasted till almost night, and sufficiently diverting it certainly was to see the different faces that were made on this occasion, some grinning and exulting in their hardness whilst others were almost suffocated and came up ready enough to have compounded after the first or
It is now time that I should say something of the climate and degree of heat since crossing the tropick, as we have been for some time within the bounds which were supposd by the ancients to be uninhabitable on account of their heat.

Almost immediately on crossing the tropick the air became sensibly much damper than usual, tho not materially hotter, the thermometer then in general stood from 80 to 82. The nearer we approachd to the calms still the damper every thing grew, this was perceivable even to the human body and very much so, but more remarkably upon all kinds of furniture: every thing made of Iron rusted so fast that the knives in peoples pockets became almost useless and the razors in cases not free.
25. All kinds of Leather became mouldy, Portfolios and trunks coverd with black leather were almost white, soon after this mould adhered to almost every thing, all the books in my Library became mouldy so that they were obliged to be wiped to preserve them. About this time we came into the calms which we met with earlier than usual; the thermometer was then at 83 and we suffered from the heat and damp together. Bathing however kept me in perfect health, tho many of the ship[s] company were ill of bilious complaints which however were but of short duration.

This continued till we got the S.E. trade, when or a little before the glass fell to 88 and soon to 78 and 79, but the dampness continued yet; to that I chiefly attribute the ill success of the Electrical experiments
25. of which I have wrote an account on separate papers that the different experiments may appear at one view.

The air during the whole time since we crossed the tropick and indeed sometime before has been nearly of the same temperature throughout the 24 hours, the Thermometer seldom rising above a degree during the time the sun is above the horizon. The windows of the cabbin have been open without once being shut ever since we left Madeira.

26. Last night and today the weather has been squally, wind rather fresh but keeping very much to the Southward; great plenty of flying fish have been about the ship few or none of which have been seen since we left the N.E. trade.

27. Fine weather but Wind rather too much to the Southward. We are today nearly
October 1768  Electricity

Octr 25.1768 five miles South of the Line by guess Long

My Machine

Made by Ramsden. Workd by a flat plate 8 inches diameter the Phial used was 6½ inches in hight and 5½ in diameter without the neck; the distance between the stopper and coating 3 inches; the stopper made of wood and fastned to the glass on the inside by a red cement probably sealing wax. The Electrometer was divided into 30 parts making in all 1½ inches nearest. About nine in the Morn the machine was set up, when we suppos’d ourselves to be somewhat more than five miles south of the line; the day pleasant, but rather cloudy; the ship going between three and four Knotts.

When the plate was first turnd round the Cushions appeard to be damp, adhering to the glass so that it was with difficulty made to
move very slowly round, tho the cushions were screwd on as lightly as possible. After wiping them very well the plate was made to go round, and in about ten minutes Electricity was excited, tho but in a small degree. The motion of the ship, and the shaking of the table causd by turning the machine, made the Electrometer (which was a very unsteady one) move backwards and forwards visibly to the eye; so that it was impossible to ascertain exactly at what distance it dischargd the Phial: it however was guessd to be about a line when at the greatest distance.

It continued to work in this manner about half an hour, in which time several attempts were made to
give the shock; which succeeded very ill, the shocks being very small, tho given with the greatest quantity of Electricity that could be got into the Phial. It then, (after having grown by degrees weaker and weaker) ceased to work entirely; upon which water was applied to the cushions, but without any effect: every thing was then wiped and dried as well as could be done in our situation, the cushions being carried to fire; but no Electric[i]ty perceivable to the touch was communicated to the conductor: whether any was then excited on the surface of the plate we did not then observe. An amalgama of Lead was then applied, which causd a small degree of Electricity, much smaller than at first, which
very soon ceased also, from that time no electricity perceivable (except by Cantons Electrometer) could be communicated to the conductor, tho the machine was workd near an hour.

In the course of these experiments two thing[s] were observd, differing from the Phaenomena usualy seen. First, the Phial when filld with Electricity as full as the Machine could; would not contain it more than a very few seconds, 3 or 4 by guess; (for no opportunity of measuring by a watch was given, the Machine Leaving off working without any warning when it was not expected.) At the end of this time not the smallest quantity of Electricity was left tho I tried all my Phials 5 in number two of which were
such as were describ'd above: the others were small ones, made much in the same manner, but instead of being coated on the inside fill'd with leaf gold.

Secondly, the floor of the Cabbin in which the experiments were tried, was coverd with a red floor cloth of painted Canvas, that had been issued to the ship from his majesties stores at Debtford; which was usually washed with salt water every morning, and sufferd to dry without being ever taken up. This prov'd as good a conductor of Electricity as any we could make use of; so that a man standing on one side the machine, and touching the coating of the Phial, was shock'd by another who touch'd the conductor w[i]thout having any communication.
with the first, except by the floor cloth under his feet. This Dr Solander and myself tried several ways, but made more experiments afterwards with Mr Greens Machine as taken notice of in the next paper.

The ill success of these experiments seems to me to have arisen chiefly from the uncommon dampness of the circumambient air which had been observ'd by everybody since we cross'd the tropick and is largely taken notice of in my Journal. By this solution alone all the Phaenomena that appear'd may be accounted for.

Air charged with particles of damp is well known to be of all others the greatest enemy to Electricity,
it immediately attracts and dissipates all the electrical matter which is collected by the machine; the machine therefore worked faintly for a little while till the damp was condensed on the conductor and chiefly on the surface of the glass Phial and then ceas’d entirely. A small quantity was however always perceiveable upon the surface of the plate and even to the end of the conductor.

The Phial tho chargd as full as the machine would fill it even at the time of its best working would not contain the Electrical matter scarce at all owing doubtless to the Communication made by the condensed damp between the Coating and stopper of the Phial; this increasd every moment so that at last
it would not contain Electricity at all.

The situation on board a ship would not allow the making use of a fire at least to warm the whole machine as should have been done and would have been a great satisfaction but the motion of the ship, the distance of the galley from the Cabbin and the number of people who are constantly busy there made that impossible.

The dampness of the air complaind of here has not been observd now for the first time. Piso in his account of the Brazils p. 5 mentions it and says that victuals &c. which have kept well before spoil immediately here. This therefore may account for the general opinion of Electrical machines failing to work when near the line as the fault could not be in my machine which workd remarkably well in London and full as well as I expected in Madeira.
Octr 25. 1768. 17 Miles
south of the line

Mr Greens machine

The machine was made by Watkins; it workd with a flat plate of Glass [ ] inches in diameter; the Jar was of Glass 8 inches high and 7 deep coated with varnish between the Lead and the stopper which was of cork, no varnish coming between that and the neck; the Electrometer was divided into 30 parts which containd 1 inch and 1/8.

[1] The plate at first refused to go round as mine had before done the cushions being drawn together by the Glass which they seemed to adhere to probably from their dampness. After some time turning however this went off and in about 10 minutes Electricity was excited.

The Electrometer was then applied which went off at No 7.
2 Electricity was kept in the Phial 30 seconds without loosing any sensible part

3 a hole was struck through two cards by the discharging wyer.

4 Shocks were given to several people much greater than any that could be Given by my machine.

5 the Phaenomenon of the floor cloth proving a conductor was tried more fully than before. A wyer (b) was passd round the Phial (a) the two ends of which were taken hold of by two people (cc) who each took hold of another person (dd). The operator (e) then touched the Phial with his discharging wyer and receivd the shock through both his arms as did (cc) and (dd) sometimes, tho at others (dd) felt it only
in the arms by which they held (cc). The comparative force of the blows which each felt was very difficult to ascertain but we supposd that (cc) felt more than (dd) and probably the operator most of all.
The chief reason why this machine worked better than mine seems to me to be that the bottle was coated with varnish between the stopper and coating of Lead. This probably did not condense the damp of the air near so readily as Glass and consequently the machine worked well when mine refused to work at all.

Monday March ye 19th 1770 of the Coast of [New Zealand]  Lat. S. Long.

The machine on being taken out of the Box was found to have had by some accident the plate and one of the Phials broken; the former was replaced by a spare one. Every part of it was perfectly dry and worked with great freedom; a small proportion of Electricity only could be excited, the most enough to strike through one card. During all our experiments the floor cloth conductd as it had done before tho it had not been washd
for some weeks our experiment[s] were soon cut short by the wind which was foul freshning so much that we could not with safety let the Machine stand. - The day was rather hazey.

Friday March 23d 1770. Lat. Long.

All the day was clear and the evening also very fine. At sunset the machine was set up; it at first entirely refusd to work but after about ¼ of an hour some sparks were excited, the greatest however that we could raise it to was only a slight shock. The floor cloth conducted as usual which we ascertained by resting upon a table or chair in which case we did not feel the shock which standing upon the ground we always did.
27. in the latitude of the Island of Fernand de Norhona, so that I am not without hopes of making it if rightly laid down; night however put an end to our hopes for the present at least, and left us in no very agreeable situation as shoals and foul ground is laid down all round the Islands.

28. Fine breeze today, our hopes of seeing the Island were again renewd but without success, so at night we judge ourselves to be past it and that the longitude is wrong laid down.

29. Wind East very pleasant, we now gave up all thoughts of the Island. This Evening the sea appeard uncommonly beaufull, flashes of light coming from it perfectly resembling small flashes of lightning, and these so frequent that sometimes 8 or ten were visible at the same moment; the seamen were divided in their acco[u]nts
29. some assuring us that it proceeded from fish who made the light by agitating the salt water, as they called it, in their darting at their prey, while others said that they had often seen them and knew them to be nothing but blubbers (*Medusas*). This made us very Eager to procure some of them, which at last we did one by the help of the landing net. They prov’d to be a species of Medusa which when brought on board appeared like metal violently heated, emitting a white light; on the surface of this animal a small *Lepas* was fix’d exactly the colour of it, which was almost transparent not unlike thin starch in which a small quantity of blue is dissolv’d. In taking these animals three or 4 species of Crabbs were taken also but very small,
29. one of which gave light full as much as a glow-worm in England tho the Creature was not so large by 10/9[?] ths; indeed the sea this night seemd to abound with light in an uncommon manner, as if every inhabitant of it furnishd its share, which might have been the case tho none kept that property after being brought out of the water except these two.

30. This Morn employd in Examining the things caught last night, which being taken by the light of our lamps (for the wind which blows in at the windows always open will not suffer us to burn candles) we could hardly then distinguish into genera, much less into species, had the good fortune to find that they were all quite new. Calld them Medusa pellucens, Lepas pellucens, Clio, Cancer fulgens and Cancer
30. *amplectens*, but we had the misfortune to loose two more species of Crabbs overboard by the tumbling of a glass overboard in which they were containd.

In the Evening the Sea was lighted in the same manner as it was last night only not near so strongly; we renewd however our endeavours to take some of the light carriers, not without success as two new species of Crabbs were taken one of which was very singular.

31. Nothing to be done today, found however that the crabbs taken yesterday were both new, calld them *vitreus* and *Crassicornis*.

NOVEMBER 1768

1. A shoal of small fish were today under our stern who attended the ship for some time; she had however too much way through the water for our instruments so we could not take any of them.
2. This day was quite void of Events, the wind however was very fair and we now approachd the place where we were next to refresh ourselves apace.

3. This morn the sun was immediately over our heads notwithstanding which the Thermometer was no higher than 77. Since we left the calms under the line the weather has grown cooler by gradual degrees, now we reckon it quite moderate after having felt the heat of 83 so lately.

This Even I for the first time (for other people had seen them much before) observd two Light spots in the heavens apearling much like the milky way, one the largest and brightest Bore S. by E. the other about South.

4. Still as we got more to the westward the wind became more favourable, today it was almost aft and has been all along creeping to the northward.
5. The thermometer kept still gradually falling as the wind got more to the northward, which appears odd as the North wind should now be the warm wind; we were not yet however enough to the Southward to find much alteration. Wind this morn was North-east, at noon North by west, between this place and mid channel it has changed from South by East. The Trade being to the Northward upon this coast has been observed long ago, tho I question whether our navigators are sufficiently apprised of it. *Piso* in his Natural history of the Brasils says that the winds along shore are constantly to the Northward from October to March and to the southward from March to October. Dampier also who certainly had as much experience as most men says the same thing, advising ships...
5. outward bound to keep to the westward where they are almost certain to find the Trade more Eastward than in mid channel, where it sometimes is due South or within 1/2 a point of it as we ourselves experienced.

6. Today light winds and very pleasant weather, the Thermometer was never above 76. Towards evening the colour of the water was observd to change upon which we sounded and found ground at 32 fathom; the lead was cast three times between 6 and 10 without finding a foot difference in the depth or quality of the bottom, which was incrusted with coral; we supposd this to be the tail of a great shoal laid down in all our charts by the name of Albrolhos, on which Ld Anson struck soundings in his outward bound passage.

7. This morn at four no ground with 100
7. Fathoms of Line. About noon long ranges of a yellowish colour appeared upon the sea, many of them very large, one (the largest) might be a mile in length and 3 or 400 yards wide. The seamen in general affirmed roundly that they were the spawn of fishes and that they had often seen the same appearance before; upon taking up some of the water so coloured we found it to be caused by innumerable small atoms, each pointed at the end and of a yellowish colour, none of them above a quarter of a line in length; in the microscope they appeared to be fasciculi of small fibres interwove one within the other, not unlike the nidi of some Phryganeas which we call caddices. What they were or for what purposes designed we could not even guess, nor so much as distinguish whether their substance was animal or
vegetable.

8. At day break today we made the Land which Provd to be the Continent of S. America in Lat. 21.16; about ten we saw a fishing boat who told us that the countrey we saw belongd to the Captainship of Espirito Santo.

Doctor Solander and myself went on board this boat in which were 11 men (9 of whom were blacks) who all fishd with lines. We bought of them the cheif part of their cargo consisting of Dolphins, two kinds of large Pelagick Scombers, Sea Bream and the fish calld in the West Indies Welshman, for which they made us pay 19 shillings and Sixpence. We had taken Spanish silver with us which we imagind was the currency of the Continent, we were therefore not a little surprizd that they askd us for English shillings and preferrd two which we by accident had to the Pistereens, tho they after some words took them also.
8. The Business of these people seemed to be going a good distance from land and catching large fish, which they salted in bulk in a place in the middle of their boat made for that purpose; in this place was about 2 Quintals of fish laid in salt which they offered to sale for 16 shillings, and would doubtless have taken half the money had we been inclind to buy them, but fresh provisions was all we wanted and the fresh fish they had which we bought servd the whole ships company.

Their provision for the Sea consisted of a cask of water and a bag of the flour of Cassada which they call Farinha de Pao or wooden flour, a very proper name for it which indeed tastes more like powderd chipps than any thing else.

Their method of drinking out of
8. their cask of water was truely primitive and pleasd me much. The cask was large, as broad as the boat and exactly fitted a place in the Ballast made for it, they consequently could not get at the bottom of it to put in a tap by which the water might be drawn out. To remedy this difficulty they made use of a cane about three feet long hollow and open at each end; this the man who wanted to drink desired his neighbour to fill for him, which he did by putting it into the cask, and laying the palm of his hand over the uppermost hole hinderd the water from running out of the other, to which the drinker applyd his mouth and the other taking off his hand lett the liquor run into the drinkers mouth till he was satisfied.

Soon after we came on board a Sphynx was taken which provd to be quite a new one, and a small bird also who was the Tanagra
8. *Jacarini* of Linn; it seemd however from Linnaeus description as well as Edwards’s and Brissons that neither of them had seen the Bird which was in reality a *Loxia nitens*.

The fish Brought on board provd to be *Scomber anxia* and *Falcatus, Coryphoena Hipparis Sparus pagrus* and *Sciaena rubens*; the second and last not being before describd we calld them by these names.

Afternoon the wind came about South and South by East and it soon came on to blow fresh which we were not at all accustomd to, so we Boarded it along shore wihout gaining much.

9. This morn wind continued South and South by west but is more moderate, but still more sea than we should chuse were we directors of the winds and waves.
9. We however stood in with the land till we found ourselves in a large bay the shores of which were very flat; in the middle of this bay were some large hills which lay far inland and made the prospect very remarkable, as expressd in the view. At this time we were by guess within five miles of the shore and our water had decreasd gradualy till we had less than five fathom; it was about four in the Evening so our Captain thought proper to put about and stand off to sea; in the Evening the wind freshend a little but was not near so troublesome as last night.

10. Wind more moderate this morn; we stood in with the land and made it nearly in the same place as we left it last night, our soundings being from 15 to
After dinner the wind came more to the Eastward and freshend, and little pieces of Seaweed now came floating by the ship which we took and it proved to be Sargaso *fucus natans*, which is generally supposed to increase upon the surface of the sea in the same manner as duck weed *Lemna* does on fresh water without having any root; this however plainly shewed that it had been rooted in the Coral rock on the bottom, as two specimens particularly had large lumps of the coral still adhering to their bottoms. Among the weed we got were some few animals but scarcely worth mentioning, one *Balistes* but quite a fry so young that it was impossible to
10. referr it to its species; a worm also was in it which provd to be *Neireis pelagica*.

In the course of this night we ran over a small bank on which the water suddenly shoald to 7 fathom and kept thereabouts for some time, it however deepend gradualy.

11. Light breezes to day, the wind much more fair than it has been so that we began to get to the Southward. The Thermometer today was no more than 72, so that we felt cold or cool at least, tho we could [not] prevail on ourselves to shut the cabbin windows as we are soon to come into much warmer weather.

Just before dark the Land was seen ahead which we supposed to be an Island off Cape Frio so we hoped to be the lengh of Cape Frio by tomorrow morn.

12. This morn we were abreast of the land
12. which proved as we thought last night to be the Island just without Cape Frio, which is call'd in some maps the Isle of Frio; the wind was fair and we pass'd it with a pleasant Breeze hoping tomorrow to get into the harbour. About noon we saw the hill call'd Sugar Loaf which is just by the harbours mouth, but it was a long way off yet so there were no hopes of reaching it this night.

The shore from Cape Frio to this place has been one uninterrupt'd beach of the whitest Colour I ever saw which they tell me is a white sand.

This Evening wind still continued fair but very little, we now saw the Sugar Loaf very plain but could not tonight reach it, so short'nd sail; we had seen for some time a small vessel under the land which seem'd to steer into the harbour.
12. as well as we.

The Land all along this Coast has been exceedingly high inland except in the bay mentiond on the 7th: the mountains seen now about Rio Janeiro were immensely high so that some of our people compared them with the Pike of Tenerife, tho I do not myself think they deserve a comparison so much higher is the Pike. Notwithstanding the hills are high and begin to rise near the shore the beach is sandy and appears to be of a firm sand.

In the Course of this Evening we aproachd very near the Land and found it very cold, to our feelings at least; the Thermometer at ten O’Clock stood at 68 1/4 which gave us hopes that the countrey would be cooler than we should expect from the accounts of travellers, especially Mr Biron who says
12. that no business is done here from 10 till 2 on account of the intense heat.

13. This Morn the Harbour of Rio Janeiro was right ahead about 2 leagues off but it being quite Calm we made our aproaches very slowly. The sea was inconceavely full of small vermes which we took without the least dificulty; they were almost all new except *Beroe labiata, Medusa radiata, fimbriata* and *Chrystallina, Dagysa*.

Soon after that a fishing boat Came a board and sold us three Scombers which proved to be new and were calld *Salmonesus*; his baites were *Clupea Chinensis* of which we also procurd specimens.

As soon as we came well into the River the Captn sent Mr Hicks his first Leutenant with a midshipman to get a
13. pilot and stood up the river expecting him down very soon. He did not nor did the boat till we were on the point of dropping an anchor just under the town; the boat then came without either of our officers, in exchange for whom came a Subaltern Portugese who seemd to have no kind of Business with us; the Cockswain brought word from the Leutenant that he was detaind on shore till the Captain should go off. Soon after we came to an anchor a ten Oard boat came alongside the ship with 12 or 14 soldiers in it who rowed round us without taking any notice of us or saying a word; a quarter of an hour after came a boat in which was a Disembargador and a Colonel of a Portugese rejument who askd us many questions which at first seemd to discourage our stay, as telling us that
13. the Governor would furnish us with any quantity of water in two days. In the conclusion however he was immensely civil telling us that the Governor would give us every assistance in his power; that the Lieutenant had not been confind but on account of the Practica had not been allowd to go on shore, he should now however be sent on board immediately; that the Captain was welcome to go on shore now but he wishd the rest of the crew might remain on board till the Paper they drew up had been delivered.

14. This morn Captn Cooke went ashore, Dr Solander and myself impatiently waiting for his return which he promisd should be the moment he had spoke with the viceroy, who would no doubt tell him that the practica paper had been deliverd and we were all at liberty to come
14. ashore when we pleasd. About twelve he came on board with a Portugese officer in his boat who had been put there by order of the viceroy, out of a compliment as he termd it, and an English gentleman Mr Forster by name a Leutenant in the Portugese service. The Captn told us that we could not be allowd to have a house or sleep ashore, so the Viceroy had told him, but Mr Forster told us that he had given orders that no person but the Captn and such common sailors as were requird to be upon duty should be permitted to go ashore, and that we the passengers were probably particularly objected to. We however in the Evening dress’d ourselves and attempted to go ashore under pretence of a visit to the Viceroy, but were stopd by the Guard boat whose officer told us that he had particular orders, which he could not transgress, to Lett no officer or Passenger except the
14. Captain pass the boat; after much conversation to no purpose we were obligd to return on board and the Captn went ashore to remonstrate to the viceroy about it, but could get no answer but that it was the King of Portugals orders and consequently must be.

15. This morn the Captn went again ashore and told the viceroy that it was nescessary to give the ship a heel, in which case it would be almost impossible for the gentlemen who were passengers to stay on board her; the viceroy as I suppose misunderstood him, and supposing that he wanted to have the ship hove down said that if the ship was reported by one of his carpenters (who should be sent on board) to want such repairs he would give her all nescessaries for so doing; in that case the Gentlemen should have a house ashore, but gave him to understand
15. that a centinel would be put at the door with orders not to let us stir out or any one come in on any pretence whatever.

16. The Captn went ashore again and remonstrated particularly against the Centinel that was put in his boat whenever he landed or came aboard, which he was told was a compliment but now found to be a guard. He received no satisfactory answers or rather none at all but that it is the King of Portugals orders.

17. Tird with waiting and remonstrating only in words, both the Captn and myself sent ashore written memorials (of which mine is subjoind as well as another with the answers) which complain of his excellency the viceroy's behaviour to us as a Kings ship as almost a breach of treaty.

18. Answers to our memorials came on board
18. in which the Captn is told that he has no reason to complain, as such usage as he has receivd has been constantly the custom of the Ports of Brasil and that the Viceroy himself servd an English ship just in the same manner at Bahia; as for me I am told that as I have not brought proper credentials from the Court of Lisbon it is impossible that I can be permitted to land.

19. Both the Captn and myself sent answers to his excellencys memorials this morn by the Leutenant, who had orders not to suffer a guard to be put into his boat but if the Guard boat insisted upon it to return on board. The boat let him pass, but the viceroy as soon as he heard that he had come ashore without a guard orderd Centinels to be put into the boat, and on
19. the Leutenant refusing to go on board unless the Centinels are taken out, ordered the boats crew to be taken into custody, the boat detain'd and the leutenant to be sent on board in a guard boat under care of an officer. When he came on board he reported what he has seen, that the men in our pinnace made not the least resistance, notwithstanding which the soldiers who took them into custody behav'd with great indecency, striking them many times and thrusting them out of the boat. The same guard boat also brought back the letters unopend.

This Evening it blew very hard at about South, Puffs coming off about three minutes distant from each other, which seldom lasted above half a minute but in that time were as violent as I ever saw.

At this time our long boat came on board with 4 cask of rum in her,
19. she with difficulty fetchd the ship and soon after by some mismanagemen[t] which I cannot account for broke adrift, carrying with her my small boat which was made fast to her; we had now no boat on board but a small 4 oard yawl, which was immediately sent after her and took her in tow, but notwithstanding all that could be done by the people who rowd in the long boat and those who towd in the yawl she was very soon out of sight, and we were under the greatest uneasiness well knowing that she drove directly upon the reef of Rocks which Runns out from the point of Ilhoa das Ferreiras, just to Leward of where we lay. After remaining in this situation till two in the morning our people cam[e] onboard and told us that the Long boat was sunk,
19. but that they had left her riding to her grapling tho full of water; as for my boat they had in returning to the ship fafn in with a reef of rocks, in which dangerous situation they had been obligd to cut her adrift: this was poor comfort tho we were glad to find the people safe, yet the Loss of our long boat which we much feard was perhaps the greatest misfortune that could happen to people who were going as we were upon discoverys.

I should have mentiond that on the detainer of our boats crew a petty officer was sent ashore with the memorials and a letter from the Captn demanding the Boat and men, who was sufferd quietly to go ashore on taking a soldier out of the guard boat; the only answer he got was verbal that the affair could not be settled as yet.

20. This morn the yawl, now the only boat we
20. had, was sent ashore to ask assistance: they returnnd about nine and brought with her our boat and crew that had been detaind, as well as another of the Viceroyes which had orders to assist us in searching for our boats.

The people who came in the Pinnace declard that they never made the least resistance but said that the soldiers struck them often, that they were confind in a loathsome dungeon where their companions were chiefly Blacks who were chaind, but the Cockswain purchasd a better apartment for seven petacks (about as many shilling English).

Our situation this whole day was better imagind than describd: the Shore boat came onboard at noon that the people might have their victuals but
20. brought no news of the Longboat. Tird with expectation I confess I had almost given over all hopes of ever seeing her again, when Just at dark night the pinnace came bringing with her both the boats and all their contents: we now immediately passd from our disagreable though[t]s to a situation as truly happy, and concluded with defying the Viceroy and all that he could do to us.

21. Letters came from the Viceroy to both the Captn and myself, in which he told me very politely that it is not in his power to permit to go ashore; in the captns he raises some doubts of our ship being a Kings ship, so I who could ground my pretensions to going ashore on no other Foundation thought it best to drop them, hoping that by and by when things were more
21. quiet I might have an opportunity of smugling myself ashore.

22. This morn I sent my servants ashore at day break who stayd till dark night and brought off many plants and insects.

23. The viceroys answer to the Captns last memorial came on board in which the Captn is accusd of smugling, which made us all angry but our venting our spleen against the Viceroy will be of very little service to us.

24. My servants went ashore again and brought off many plants & c.

25. This morn Dr Solander went into the town as surgeon of the Ship, to visit a friar who had desird that the surgeon might be sent to him; he receivd civilities from the people rather more than he could expect.

26. I myself went ashore this morn before day break and stayd till dark night;
26. while I was ashore I met several of the inhabitants who were very civil to me, taking me to their houses where I bought of them stock for the ship tolerably cheap, a porker midlingly fat for 11 shill, a muscovy duck something under two shils &c.

The countrey where I saw it abounded with vast variety of Plants and animals, mostly such as have not been describd by our naturalists as so few have had an opportunity of coming here; indeed no one that I know of even tolerably curious has been here since Marcgrave and Piso about the year 1640, so it is easy to guess the state in which the nat hist of such a countrey must be.

To give a Cataloge of what I found would be a trouble very little to the purpose, as every particular is mentiond in the general catalogues of this place. I cannot however help mentioning some
26. which struck me the most and consequently gave me particular pleasure: these were chiefly the parasitick plants especially renealmias, for I was not fortunate enough to see one epidendron, and the different species of Bromelia, many not before describd had I been fortunate enough to see fructifications which I did of very Few.  

*B. Karratas* I saw here growing on the decayd trunk of a tree 50 feet high at least, which it had so intirely coverd that the whole seemd to be a tree of Karratas. The growth of the also pleasd me much tho I had before got a very good Idea of it from Rumphius, who has a very good figure of the tree in his *Herb:Amboin*. Tab: Add to these the whole Contrey Coverd with the Beatifull blossom of *Malpigias, Bannisterias, Pasifloras*, not to Forget *Poinciana* and *Mimosa sensitiva*.
26. and a beatifull species of Clutia of which I saw great plenty, in short the wildest Spotts here were varied with a greater quantity of Flowers as well as more beatifull ones than our best devisd gardens, a sight infinitely pleasing to the Eye for a short time tho no doubt it would soon tire with the continuance of it.

The birds of many species especialy the smaller ones sat in great abundance on the bough’s, many of them coverd with most Elegant plumage. I shot Loxia Brasiliensis and saw several specimens of them. Insects also were here in great abundance, many species very fine but much more Nimble than our Europaeans especialy the Butterflies, which almost all flew near the topps of the trees and were very difficult to come at except when the sea breeze flew fresh, which kept them low down
26. among the trees where they might be taken. Humming birds I also saw of one species but could not shoot them.

The banks of the Sea and more remarkably all the Edges of small brooks were coverd with innumerable quantities of small Crabbs, *cancer vocans* Linn, one hand of which is very large. Among these were many both whose hands were remarkably small and of equal size: these my black servant told me were females of the others, and indeed all I examind, which were many, provd to be females tho whether realy of the same species with *vocans* I cannot determine on so short an acquaintance.

I saw but little cu[l]tivation and that seemd to be taken but little pains with; grass land was the cheif on which were many Lean cattle feeding and lean they might well be, for almost all the species of grass which I observd here were creepers,
26. and consequently so close to the ground that tho there might be upon them a sufficient bite for horses or sheep yet how horned cattle could live at all was all that appeard extraordinary to me.

I also saw their gardens or small patches in which they cultivate many sorts of European garden stuff as Cabbage, peas, beans, kidney beans, turnips, white raddishes, pumkins, & c. but all much inferior to ours except perhaps the last; here also they grow water melons and pine apples the only Fruits which I have seen them cultivate. The water melons are very good but the Pines much inferior to those I have tasted in Europe; hardly one I have yet had could have been reckond among the midling sort, many were worse than I have seen sent from table in England where nobody would Eat them,
26. tho in general they are very sweet they have not the least flavour; but more of their Fruits by and by.

In these gardens grow also Yamms and Mandihoca or Cassada which supplys the place of Bread here, for as our Europaean bread corn will not grow here all the Flour they have is brought from Portugal at a large expence, too great for even the midling people to purchase much more the inferior ones.

27. This morn when the Boats returnd from watering they brought word that they heard it said in the town that people were sent out in search of some of our people who were ashore without leave: this we concluded meant either Dr Solander or myself which made it nescessary for us to go no more ashore while we stayd.

28. These three days nothing material hapned, 29.

30.
28. Every thing went on as usual only we if possible increasd our haste to be gone from this place.

DECEMBER 1768

1. This Morn our boat returning from shore brought us the very disagreeable news that Mr Forster, who I before mentiond, was taken into custody chargd with having smuggled things ashore from our ship: this charge tho totaly without foundation was lookd upon as a sufficient reason for his being put into prison, but we beleive the real cause to be his having shewn some countenance to his Countrey men, as we heard at the same time that five or six Englishmen residing in the town and a poor Portugese who used to assist our people in buying things were all put into prison also without any reason being given.

2. This Morn thank god we have got all we want from these illiterate impolite gentry, so we got up our anchor and saild to the
2. point of Ilhoa dos cobras, where we were to lay and wait for a fair wind which shoud come every night from the Land. We were fortunate in the arrival of a Spanish Brig comeing from Buenos Ayres with Letters for Spain which arrivd about a week ago; her officers were receivd ashore with all possible politeness and allowd to take a house without the least hesitation. The Captn Don Antonio de Monte Negro y Velasco with all possible politeness offerd to take our letters to Europe which we accepted of as a very Fortunate circumstance and sent them on board this morn.

3. We remaind without any Sea breeze.

4. 

5. This Morn early a dead calm, we attemptd to tow down with our boats and came near abreast of Sta Cruz their cheif Fortification, when to our great surprize the Fort fird two shot at us one of which went just over
5. our Mast: we immediately brought to and sent ashore to enquire the reason, were told that no order had come down to allow us to pass without which no ship was ever sufferd to go below that fort. We were now obligd to send to town to know the reason of such extraordinary behavior, the Answer came back about 11 that it was a mistake, for the Brigadier had forgot to send the letter which had been wrote some days: it was however sent by the boat and we had leave to proceed. We now began to weigh our anchor which had been droppd in foul ground when we were fird at, but it was hung so fast in a rock that it could not be got out while the Land breeze blew, which today continued almost till four in the Even; as soon as the Sea breeze came we filld our sails and carrying the ship over the anchor tripd it but were obligd to sail back almost
5. as far as we had towd the ship in the Morn.

This day and yesterday the air was crowded in an uncommon manner with Butterflies chiefly of one sort, of which we took as many as we pleas’d on board the ship, their quantity was so large that at some times I may say many thousands were in view at once in almost any direction you could look, the greatest part of them much above our mast heads.

6. No land breeze today so we are confind in our disagreeable situation without a possibility of moving: many curses were this day expended on his excellence.

7. This morn weighd and stood out to sea. As soon as we came to Sta Cruz the pilot desired to be dischargd and with him our enemy the guard boat went off, so we were left our own masters and immediately resolved to go ashore on one of the Islands in the mouth of the
7. harbour: their ran a great swell but we made shift to land on one call’d Raza, on which we gathered many species of Plants and some insects. *Alstromeria salsilla* was here in tolerable plenty and *Amarillis mexicana*, they were the most specious plants; we stay’d till about 4 oClock and then came aboard the ship heartily tired, for the desire of doing as much as we could in a short time had made us all exert ourselves in a particular manner tho expos’d to the hottest rays of the sun just at noonday.

Now we are got fairly to Sea and have intirely got rid of these troublesome people I cannot help spending some time in describing them tho I was not myself once in their town, yet my intelligence coming from Dr Solander who was, and our Surgeon Mr Monkhouse a very sensible man
7. who was ashore every day to buy our provisions, I think cannot err much from truth.

**Daily Log continued on Log page 130**

[Some account of Rio de Janeiro]

The town of Rio de Janeiro the capital of the Portugese dominions in America situate on the banks of the River of that name, both are call’d I apprehend from the Roman saint Januarius accord[ing to the] Spanish and Portugese custom of naming their discoveries from the Saint on whose feast they are made.

It is regular and well built after the fashion of Portugal, every house having before its windows a Lattice of wood behind which is a little balcony. For size it is much larger and I could have thought, probably little inferior to any of our Countrey towns in England Bristol or Liverpool not excepted; the streets are all straight intersecting each other at Right angles and have this peculiar Convenience, that much the greater number
lay in one direction and are commanded by the Gunns of their citadel calld St Sebastian which is situate on the top of a hill over looking the town.

It is supplyd with water by an aqueduct which brings it from the neighbouring hills upon two stories of arches, said in some places to be very high; the water that this brings is conveyd into a fountain in the great square immediately opposite the Governors palace, which is guarded by a sentry who has sufficient work to keep regularity and order among so many as are always in waiting at this place; there is also water laid into some other part of the town but how it is brought there I could not hear, only that it was better than the fountain which is exceedingly indifferent, so much so as not to be likd.
by us tho we had been two months at sea in which time our water was almost continually bad.

The Churches here are very fine dressd out with more ornaments even than those in Europe, and all parts of their religion is carried on with more shew; their processions in particular are very extraordinary, every day one or other of the parishes go in solemn order with all the insignia of their church, altar, host &c through their parish, begging for what they can get and praying in all form at every Corner of a street.

While we were there one of the largest churches in the town was rebuilding and for that reason the parish belonging to it had leave to walk through the whole City, which they did once a week and collected much money for the carrying on of their
Edifice: at this ceremony all boys under a certain age were obliged to attend nor were the gentlemens sons ever excusd. Each of these were dressd in a Black cassock with a short red Cloak reaching half way down their shoulders, and carried in his hand a Lanthorn hung on the End of a pole about 6 or 7 feet long, the light caused by this (for there were always at least 200 Lights) is greater than can be imagind; I myself who saw it out of the cabbin windows call[d] together my mess mates and shewd it to them imagining that the town was on fire.

Besides this traveling religion a man who walks the streets has opportunity enough to shew his attachment to any saint in the Calendar, for every corner and almost every house has before it a little cupboard in which some Saint or other keeps his Residence, and least he should not see
his votaries in the night he is furnishd with a small lamp which hangs before his little glass window: to these it is very customary to pray and sing hymns with all the vociferation imaginable, as may be imagin'd when I say that I and every one else in the ship heard it very distinctly every night tho we lay at least half a mile from the town.

The government of this place seems to me to be much more despotick even than that of Portugal tho many precautions have been taken to render it otherwise. The chief magistrates are the viceroy, the governor of the town and a council whose number I could not learn, but only that the viceroy had in this the casting vote: without the consent of this council nothing material should be done, yet every day shews that the viceroy and governour at least if not all the rest do the most unjust things without consulting any one. Putting a man into prison.
without giving him a hearing and keeping him there till he is glad at any rate to get out without asking why he was put in, or at best sending him to Lisbon to be tried there without letting his family here know where he is gone to, is very common. This we experien[c]d while here, for every one who had interpreted for our people, and some who had only assisted in buying provisions for them, were put into Jail merely I suppose to shew us their power. I should however except from this one John Burrish an officer in their customs, a man who has been here 13 years and is so compleatly become a Portugese that he is known by no other name than Don John: he was of service to our people, tho what he did was so clogd with a suspicious fear of offending the Portugese as renderd it disgustfull. It is nescessary that any one who should Come here should know his
Character, which is mercenary tho contented with a little as the present given to him demonstrated, which consisted of 1 dozn of beer 10 galls of Brandy 10 peices of ships beef and as many of Pork: this was what he himself askd for, and sent on board the Cagg for the spirit and with this he was more than satisfied.

They have a very extrordinary method of keeping people from traveling - to hinder them I suppose from going into any districk where gold or diamonds may be found, as there are more of such than they can possibly guard, which is this: there are certain bounds beyond which no man must go, these vary every month at the discretion of the Vic[e]roy, sometimes they are a few sometimes many Leagues Round the City: Every man must in consequence of this come to town to know where the Bounds are, for if he is
taken by the guards who constantly patrole on their edges he is infallibly put in prison, even if he is within them, unless he can tell where they are.

The inhabitants here are very numerous, they consist of Portugese, negroes, and Indians aborigines of the countrey. The township of Rio, whose extent I could not learn but was only told that it was but a small part of the Capitanea or province, is said to contain 37,000 whites and about 17 negroes to each white, which makes their numbers 629,000 and the number of inhabitants in all 666,000. As for the Indians they do not live in this neighbourhood tho many of them are always here doing the Kings work, which they are obligd to do by turns for small pay for which purpose they come from their habitations at a distance. I saw many of them as the guard boat was constantly
7. rowd by them, they are of a light copper colour with long lank black hair; as to their policy or manner of living when at home I could not learn any thing about it.

The military here consist of 12 regiments of Regulars, 6 Portugese and 6 Creolians and as many of Provincial militia who may be assembled upon occasion. To the regulars the inhabitants shew great deference, for as Mr Forster an English Gentleman in their service told me, if any of the people were not to pull off their hatts when they meet an officer he would immediately knock them down, which custom renders the people remarkably Civil to strangers who have at all a gentlemanlike appearance. All the officers of these regiments are expected three times a day to attend at the Sala or Viceroy's levee, where they formaly ask for commands,
7. where their constant answer is there is nothing new: this policy is Intended as I have been told to prevent them from going into the countrey which it most effectualy does.

This town as well as all others in South America belonging either to Spanyards or Portugese has long been infamous for the unchastity of its women; the people who we talkd with here confirmd the accounts declaring, especialy Mr Forster, that he did not beleive there was one modest woman in the township, which I must own appeard to me a most wonderfull assertion but I must take it for granted as I had not even the least opportunity to go among them. Dr Solander who was ashore declares however that as soon as it was night the windows were every one furnishd with one or more women, who as he walkd along with two more gentlemen gave nosegays to which ever of them each preferrd, which Complement
the gentlemen returnd in kind, notwithstanding which each of them threw away whole hatfulls of flowers in their walk tho it was not a long one.

Assassinations are I fancy more frequent here than in Lisbon as the churches still take upon them to give protection to criminals: one accident of the kind happennd in the sight of S. Evans our Cockswain, a man who I can depend upon, who told me he saw two people talking together to all appearance in a freindly manner, when one on a sudden drew a knife and stabbd the other twice and ran away pursued by some negroes who saw the fact likewise, but what the farther Event of this was I could not learn.

Thus much for the town and its inhabitants. I shall now speak of the coundrey which I know rather more of than of the other as I was ashore one whole day: in that time I saw much Clead ground
but chiefly of an indifferent quality, tho doubtless there is such as is very good as the sugar and tobacco which is sent to Europe from hence plainly testifies; but all that I saw was employed in Breeding cattle of which they have great plenty, tho their pastures are the worst I ever saw on account of the shortness of the grass, and consequently the beef sold in the market tho it is tolerably cheap is so lean that an Englishman can hardly Eat it. I likewise saw great plantations of *Iatropha manikot*, which is called in the West Indies Cassada and here Farina de Pao, i.e. wooden meal, a very proper name, for the cakes they make with it taste as if they were made of Sawdust and yet it is the only bread which is Eat here - for European bread is sold at
nearly the rate of a shilling a pound, and is also exceeding bad on account of the flour which is generaly heated in its passage from Europe.

The Countrey produces many more articles but as I did not see them or hear them mentiond I shall not set them down, tho doubtless it is capable of bringing any thing that our West India Islands do, notwithstanding this they have neither Coffee or chocolate but import both from Lisbon.

Their fruits however I must not pass over in Silence, they have several I shall particularly mention those that were in season while we were there, which were Pine apples, Melons, water melons, oranges, Limes, Lemons, sweet Lemons, citrons, Plantanes, Bananes, Mangos, Mamme apples, acajou apples and nutts, Jamboira, another sort which bears a small black fruit, Coco nutts, Palm nuts of two kinds, Palm berries.
Of these I must seperately give my opinion, as no doubt it will seem strange to some that I should assert that I have eat many of them and especialy pine apples better in England than any I have met with here. Begin then with the pines as the Fruit from which I expected the most, they being I beleive natives of this countrey, tho I cannot say I have seen or even heard of their being at this time wild any where in this neighbourhood: they are cultivated much as we do cabbages in Europe or rather with less care, the plants being set between bedds of any kind of garden stuff and sufferd to take their chance, the price of them in the Market is seldom above and generaly under a vintain which is 3 halfpence. All that Dr Solander and myself tasted we agreed were much inferior to those we had eat in England; tho in general they were more Juicy and sweet yet they had no flavour but were like sugar melted in water. Their Melins
are still worse from the Specimen we had, for we got but one, which was perfectly mealy and insipid; their water melons however are very good for they have some little flavour or at least a degree of acid which ours have not. Oranges are large and very juicy, we thought them good, doubtless better than any we had tasted at home, but probably Italy and Portugal produce as good had we been there in the time of their being in perfection. Lemons and limes are like ours, Sweet Lemons are sweetish and without flavour, Citrons have a sickly faint taste otherwise are like them. Mangos were not in perfection but promised to be a very fine fruit, they are about the size of a peach, full of a melting yellow pulp not unlike that of a summer peach which has a very grateful flavour, but in all we had it was spoild by a taste of
turpentine which I am told is not found in the ripe ones. Bananas are in shape and size like a small thick sausage, coverd with a thick yellow rind, which is peeld off and the fruit within is of a consistence which might be expected from a mixture of Butter and flour but a little Slimey, its taste is sweet with a little perfume. Plantanes differ from these in being longer and thinner and having less lusciousness in their taste: both these fruits were disagreable to most of our people but after some use I became tolerably fond of them. Acajou or casshou is shapd like an apple but larger, the taste very disagreab[l]e sourish and bitter, the nut grows at the top of them. Mamme apples are bigger than a Codlin in England, Coverd with a deep yellow skin, the pulp on the inside is very insipid or rather disagreable to the taste, and full of small round seeds coverd with a thick mucilage which continualy Cloy your mouth. Jamboira is the same as I saw at Madeira, a fruit
calculated more to please the smell than the taste; the other sort are small and black and resemble much the taste of our English bilberries. Coco nutts are so well known in England that I need only say I have tasted as good there as any I met with here. Palm nutts of two sorts, one long and shapd like dates the other round, both these are rosted before their kernels are Eatable and Even then they are not so good a[s] Coco nuts. Palm berries appear much like Black grapes, they are the fruit of *Bactris minor*, but for Eating have scarce any pulp covering a very large stone and what there is has nothing but a light acid to recommend it. Here are also the fruits of several species of prickle pears which are very insipid. Of Europaean Fruits I saw apples but very mealy and insipid and one peach which was also a very bad one.
Tho this Countrey should produce many and very valuable druggs we could not find any in the apothecarys shops but *Pareira Brava* and *Balsam Copivi*, of both which we bought at excessive cheap prices and had very good of the sort. I fancy the drug trade is cheifly carried on to the northward as is that of the Dying woods, at least we could hear nothing of them here.

For manufactures I know of none carried on here except that of Cotton hammocks, which are usd for people to be carried about in as we do Sedan chairs, these are made cheifly by the Indians. But the cheif riches of the countrey comes from the mines, which are situated far up in the countrey, indeed no one could tell me how far, for even the situation of them is as carefully as possible conceald and Troops are continualy employd in guarding the Roads that lead to them, so that it is
next to impossible for any man to get a sight of them except those who are employd there; at least no man would attempt it from mere curiosity for every body who is found on the road without being able to give a good account of himself is hangd immediately.

From these mines a great quantity of gold certainly comes but it is purchasd at a vast expence of lives; 40,000 negroes are annualy imported on the Kings accompt for this purpose, and notwithstanding that the year before last they dyed so fast that 20,000 more were obligd to be draughted from the town of Rio.

Pretious stones are also found here in very large quantities, so large that they do not allow more than a certain quantity to be collected in a year, which is done thus: a troop of people are sent into the Countrey where they are found and orderd to return when they have collected a certain quantity, which
they sometimes do in a month more or less, then they return and after that it is death for any one to be found in the Countrey on any pretence whatever till the next year.

Diamonds Topazes of several different qualities and amethysts are the stones that are cheifly found. Of the first I did not see any but was told that the viceroy had by him large quantities and would sell them on the King of Portugals account, but in that case they would not be at all cheaper than those in Europe. Topazes and amethysts I bought a few of for specimens; the former were divided into three sorts of very different value, Calld here pinga dogua Qualidade premeiro and segundo, and chrystallos ormerilles; they were sold large and small good and bad together by octavos or the eighth part of an ounce, the first sort 4sh:9d; 2[nd sort] 4:0; 3[rd sort] . Amethysts . But it was smugling in the highest degree to have any
thing to do with them formerly there were Jewelers here who wo[r]kd stones, but about 14 months ago orders came from the Court of Portugal that no more stones should be wrought here except on his account; the Jewellers were immediately orderd to bring all their tools to the Viceroy which they were obligd to do, and from that time to this have not been sufferd to do any thing for their support. Here are however a number of slaves who work stones for the King of Portugal.

The Coin current here is either that of Portugal especialy 36 shill peices, or Coin made here which is much debasd, especialy the silver which are calld petacks, of which there are two sorts one of less value than the other, easily distinguishable by the number of rees markd on the outside, but they are little used; they also have
Copper coin like that in Portugal, 5 and 10 rey peices, two of the latter are worth 3 halfpence, 40 petacks are worth 36 shillings.

The harbour of Rio de Janeiro is certainly a very good one: the Entrance is not wide but the Sea breeze which blows every morning makes it easy for any ship to go in before the wind, and when you get abreast the town it increases in breadth prodigiously so that almost any number of ships might lay in 5 or 6 fathom water oozy bottom. It is defended by many works, especially the entrance where it is narrow, there is their strongest fortification called Sta Cruz and another opposite it; there is also a platform mounting about 22 gunns without that just under the Sugar Loaf on the sea side, but that seems entirely calculated to hinder the Landing of an Enemy in a sandy bay from whence there is a passage to the back part.
of the town, which is entirely void of Defence except that the whole town is open to the Gunns of the Citadel St Sebastian as I said before. Between Sta Cruz and the town are several small batteries of 5 to 10 gunns and one pretty large one calld Berga Leon. Immediately before the town is Ilhoa dos Cobras, an Island fortified all round, which seems incapable of doing much mischief from its immense size, at least it would take more men to defend it even tolerably in case of an attack than could Possibly be spard from a town totally without Lines or any defence round itself. As for Sta Cruz, their cheif fortification on which they most rely seems very incaple of making any great resistance if smartly attackd by shipping: it is a stone fort which mounts many gunns indeed, but they lie tier above
tier and are consequently very open to the attack of a ship which may come within 2 cable length’s or less of them. Besides they have no supply of water there but what they have from a cistern in which they catch rain, or in times of Drouth are supplyd from the adjacent countrey; this they have been obligd to build above ground Least the water should taint by the heat of the climate, which a free access of air prevents; a shot consequently which fortunately should break that cistern would reduce the defenders to the utmost nescessity.

I was told by a person who certainly knew and I beleive meant to inform me right, that a little to the southward just without the South head of the harbour was a bay in which boats might land with all facility without an obstruction, as there is no kind of work there, and from this bay it is not above three
hours march to the town, which you aproach on the Back part where it is as defenceless as the Landing place; but this seems incredible yet I am inclind to beleive it of these people whose cheif policy consists in hindering people from looking about them as much as possible. It may therefore be as my informer said that the existence of such a bay is but lately found out, indeed was it not for that policy I could beleive any thing of their stupidity and ignorance, when the Governor of the town Brigadier General Don Pedro de Mendoza y Furtado ask’d the Captain of our ship whether the transit of Venus which we were going to observe was not the passing of the North star to the South pole, which he said he always understood it to be.

The river and indeed the whole coast abounds with greater variety of Fish than I have ever seen; seldom a day passd in
which we had not one or more new species brought to us, indeed the bay is the most convenient place for fishing I have ever seen for it abounds with Islands between which there is shallow water and proper beaches for drawing the Seine. The sea also without the bay is full of Dolphins and large mackrell of several sorts who very readily bite at hooks which the inhabitants tow after their boats for that purpose, in short the Countrey is Capable with a very little industry of producing infinite plenty both of necessaries and luxuries: was it in the hands of Englishmen we should soon see its consequence, as things are tolerably plentifull even under the direction of the Portugese, who I take to be without exception the laziest as well as the most ignorant race in the whole world.

The Climate here is I fancy very good, the Countrey certainly is very wholesome,
during our whole stay the Thermometer was never above 83. We had however a good deal of Rain and once it blew very hard. I am rather inclind to think that this countrey has rather more rain than those in the same northern Latitude are observd to have, not only from what happend during our short stay but from Marcgrave who gives us metereological observations on this Climate for 3 years: you may observe that it raind here in those years almost every other Day throughout the year, but more especialy in May and June in which months it raind along without Ceasing.

Daily Log resumes from Log page 104

8. This morn at day break a dolphin was taken and soon after a shark appeard who took the bait very readily, and during the time that we were playing him under the cabbin window it cast something out of his mouth that either was or appeard very like its stomack, this it threw out and drew in again many times. I have often heard from seamen that they can

Daily Log continues Log page 131
Plantae Brasilienses

Monandria
Canna Indica Sp. pl. I.1
- - - - - laevicapsularis Mscr.
Thalia geniculata 3.1
Boerhavia scandens 4.3
Salicornia procumbens Mscr.

Diandria
Nyctanthes Sambac 8.2.fl.pl.
Jasminum officinale 9.1
Verbena Jamaicencis 27.3
- - - - - varietas glabra
- - - - - - - - - - hirsuta
Rosmarinus officinalis 33.1
Piper Amalago 41.6
- - - - - hispidum Mscr.
- - - - - laevigatum Mscr.

Triandria
Iris Ensata Mscr.
Commelina communis 60.1
- - - - - Zannonia 61.7
Schoenus glomeratus 65.11
- - - - - squarrosus Mscr.
Cyperus minimus 66.2. Mscr.
- - - - - sessilis Mscr.
- - - - - strigosus 69.18. Mscr.
- - - - - compressus 68.14. Mscr.
- - - - - elegans 68.11. Mscr.
- - - - - rotundus 67.6. Mscr.
- - - - - ligularis 69.19. Mscr.
- - - - - Comosus Mscr.
- - - - - exaltatus Mscr.
**Plantae Brasilienses**

Scirpus spadiceus 74.20. Mscr.
Paspalum virgatum 81.2
Panicum glaucum 83.4. Mscr.
- - - - - setosum Mscr.
- - - - - Italicum 83.6. Mscr.
- - - - - pallidum Mscr.
- - - - - sanguinale 84.73. Mscr.
Milium villosum Mscr.
- - - - - punctatum 91.5
Agrostis indica 94.13
- - - - - cruciata 94.15
- - - - - linearis 85.16. Mscr.
Aira cappillaris Mscr.
Poa ciliaris 102.20
Briza eragrostis 103.5. Mscr.
Cynosurus virgatus 106.6
- - - - - indicus 106.8. Mscr.
Mollugo verticilata 131.5

Tetrandria
Spermacoce tenuior 147.1
- - - - - - - hirta 148.3
- - - - - - - Capitata Mscr. *fig. pict.*
Plantago major 163.1
Scoparia dulcis 168.1
Cissus Sycioides 170.3
- - - - - quinquefolia Mscr.
Ludwigia hirta Mscr.
Rivina humilis 177.1
Lygistum capitatum Mscr.
- - - - - - - pentandrum Mscr.

Pentandria
Heliotropium peruvianum 181.1. *fig. pict.*
- - - - - - - scabrosum Mscr.
Planta Brasilienses

Anagallis Monelli 211.2
Convolvulus blandus Mscr.
- - - - - - - - - umbellatus 221.13
- - - - - - - - - sarmentosus Mscr.
- - - - - - - - - humifusus Mscr.
- - - - - - - - - amoenus Mscr. fig. pict.
- - - - - - - - - brasiliensis 226.41
Conocarpus racemosa 251.2
Nicotiana Tabacum 258.3
Physalis angulata 262.7
Solanum verbascifolium 263.1
- - - - - - - - - hirsutum Mscr.
- - - - - - - - - rigidum Mscr.
- - - - - - - - - Lycopersicum 265.11
- - - - - - - - - nigrum patulum 266.15.B.
- - - - - - - - - campechiense 267.18
- - - - - - - - - panniculatum 267.10
Capsicum annuum 270.1
Wheleria oppositifolia Mscr.
- - - - - - - alternifolia
Cordia? macrophylla 274.4?
Varronia scabrosa Mscr.
- - - - - - - curassavica 276.4
Ceratites amoena Mscr. fig. pict.
Cestrum nocturnum 277.1
Sideroxylon laevigatum Mscr.
Rhamnus Iguaneus 282.17. Mscr.
Celastrus myrtifolius 285.3. Mscr.
- - - - - - - laevigatus Mscr.
Physiphora laevigata Mscr.
Celosia cristata 297.3
Illicebrum vermiculatum 300.10
- - - - - - - glabratum Mscr.
Echites pubescens Mscr. fig. pict.
- - - - - tomentosa Mscr.
Tabernemontana cymosa L. Mant. 53
Cynanchum suaveolens Mscr. fig. pict.
- - - - - - - - - crassifolium Mscr. fig. pict.
Asclepias suaveolens Mscr. fig. pict.
Chenopodium album 319.6.
- - - - - - - - -ambrosioides 320.10
Gomphroena globosa 326.1. Hort.
Coriandrum sativum 367.1. Hort.
Anethum graveolens 371.1. Hort.
Rhus obtusatum Mscr.
Turnera ulmifolia 387.1
Evolvulus nummularius 391.1
Pocockia lucida Mscr.

Hexandria
Bromelia Ananas 408.1
- - - - - pseudo ananas Mscr. f.p.
- - - - - Karratas 408.3. Mscr.
- - - - - bracteata Mscr. fig. pict.
Tillandsia utriculata 409
- - - - - stricta Mscr. fig. pict.
- - - - - argentea Mscr. fig. pict.
- - - - - usneoides 411.9
Amaryllis Reginae 421.5
Alstroemeria salsilla 462.3. Mscr. fig. pict.
- - - - - - - - - pulchella Mscr. fig. pict.
Loranthus sessilis Mscr.
- - - - - - decussatus Mscr.

Octandria
Calyxis ternaria Mscr. fig. pict.
Dirca cymosa Mscr.
Polygonum barbatum
Plantae Brasilienses

Paulinia pinnata 525.7
- - - - - - pilosa Mscr.
- - - - - - Endecaphylla Mscr.
- - - - - - mexicana 525.4. Mscr.
- - - - - - tenera Mscr.
Sapindus saponaria 526.1
Cardiospermum Halicacabum 525.1
- - - - - - - - - - - - latifolium Mscr. fig. pict.

Enneandria
Laurus Cinnamomum 528.1

Decandria
Sophora occidentalis 533.1
Cassia bifolia Mscr.
Poinciana pulcherrima 544.3
Guilandina Bonducella 545.2
Anacardium occidentale 548.1
Melia sempervirens Mscr.
Trichilia glabrata Mscr.
- - - - - - Havannensis Jacq. Hist. 129.t.175.f.38
Melastoma hirta 559.5
- - - - - - viscida Mscr.
- - - - - - holosericea 559.6
- - - - - - quadrangularis Mscr. fig. pict.
- - - - - - laevigata 559.8
Malpighia nitida 609.3. fig. pict.
- - - - - - sericea Mscr.
- - - - - - cryosophyllum Mscr.
Banisteria ciliata Mscr. fig. pict.
- - - - - - atriplicifolia Mscr. fig. pict.
- - - - - - emarginata Mscr.f. p.
- - - - - - diffusa Mscr.
- - - - - - fulgens Mscr. fig. pict.
Cotyledon laciniata 615.7
Oxalis macrophylla Mscr.
Plantae Brasilienses

Dodecandria
Triumfetta rhombea Mscr.
- - - - - - semitriloba L. Mant. 73?
Portulacca oleracea 638.1
- - - - - - pilosa 639.1
Lythrum Melanium 641.7

Icosandria
Cactus triqueter Mscr.
- - - - quadrangularis 667.4
- - - - triangularis 669.14
- - - - polygonus Mscr.
- - - - Tuna 669.18
- - - - Phyllanths 670.21
Psidium pyriferum 672.1
Eugenia Jambos 672.2. Variet.
- - - - coronata Mscr.
- - - - latifolia Mscr.
- - - - pulposa Mscr.
Myrtus attenuata Mscr.
Punica granatum 676.1
Chrysobalanus oppositifolius Mscr. f.p.
Sesuvium portulacastrum 684.1. fig. pict.
Rosa centifolia 704.7. variet.
- - - - sempervirens 704.9. variet.

Polyandria
Capparis racemosa Mscr.
- - - - - - flexuosa 722.9
Annona myrtina Mscr.

Didynamia
Nepeta pectinata 799.14
Ocymum Basilicum 833.3
- - - - - - minimum 833.4
Plantae Brasilienses

Doodia campestris Mscr.
Bignonia aequinoctialis 869.4? Mscr.
- - - - - - - panniculata 869.5. Mscr.
- - - - - - - Capreolata 870.7. Mscr.
- - - - - - - pubescens 870.8. Mscr.
- - - - - - - ornata Mscr.
- - - - - - - extensa Mscr.
- - - - - - - venusta Mscr.
- - - - - - - Caerulea 872.17. Mscr.
Lantana mista Mscr. fig. pict.
- - - - - - alba Mscr.
- - - - - - stricta Mscr.
Bontia cuneata Mscr.

Tetradynamia
Brassica oleracea 932.5. Hort.
Raphanus sativus 935.1. Hort.
Cleome triphylla 938.4. Mscr.
- - - - - - spinosa 939.9. Mscr.

Monadelphia
Waltheria indica 941.2
- - - - - - angustifolia 941.3
Sida spinosa 960.1
- - - Juncea Mscr.
- - - Rhombifolia 961.3
- - - fruticosa Mscr.
- - - panniculata 962.11. Mscr.
Malva spicata 967.1
- - - - pilosa Mscr.
Gossypium arboreum 975.3
Hibiscus tiliaceus 976.4. Mscr.
- - - - - - mutabilis 977.7. fl. pl. Hort.
Plantae Brasilienses

Hibiscus sabdariffa 978.14
- - - - - - Abelmoschus 980.18
- - - - - - esculentus 980.19

Diadelphia
Œdera spicata Mscr.
Securidacca scandens 992.1. Mscr.
- - - - - - erecta 992.2.
Abrus precatorius Syst. nat.472. 1025
Erythrina Corallodendron occ. 992.2
Clitoria brasiliiana 1026.2
Cytissus Cajan 1041.4
Hedysarum canescens 1054.21
- - - - - - - hamatum 1056.31.B
Indigofera tinctoria 1061.1
Trigonella minax Mscr.

Polyadelphia
Citrus medica 1100.1a
- - - - - Limon 1100.B
- - - - - aurantium 1100.2

Syngenesia
Sonchus oleraceus 1165.5
Serratula oppositifolia Mscr.
Bidens calyculata Mscr.
Eupatorium succulentum Mscr. fig. pict.
Ageratum Conyzoides 1175.1
Chrysocoma albiflora Mscr. fig. pict.
Calaea trinervia Mscr.
Gnaphalium arenarium 1195.18
- - - - - - decurrens Mscr.
Plantae Brasilienses

Baccharis Ivaefolia 1204.1
Conyza sessiliflora Mscr.
- - - - - - scabra Mscr.
- - - - - - aromatic Mscr.
Erigeron canadense 1210.5
- - - - - - brasiliense Mscr.
Tussilago albida Mscr.
Senecio tinctus Mscr.
- - - - - - viscosus?
Tagetes patula 1249.1. Hort.
Matricaria Parthenium 1255.1
Zinnia multiflora 1269.2
Buthalmum scabrosum Mscr.
Verbesina Acmella 1271.5. Mscr.
Calendula officinalis 1304.3. Hort.
Elephantopus angustifolius Mscr.
Impatiens Balsamina 1328.3. Hort.

Gynandria
Epidendrum secundum 1349.7. fig. pict.
- - - - - - - - bifolium Mscr. fig. pict.
- - - - - - - - corniculatum Mscr. fig. pict.
Passiflora humifusa Mscr.
- - - - - - setacea Mscr.
Pothos lanceolata 1373.1. Mscr.

Monoecia
Olyra latifolia 1379.1. Mscr.
Phyllanthus Niruri 1393.3
Ambrosia elatior 1403.1
- - - - - - - - frutescens Mscr.
Amaranthus viridis 1405.12
- - - - - - - - caudatus 1406.14
Plantae Brasilienses

Plukenetia tricocca Mscr.
Dalechampia scandens 1423.1. Mscr.
Acalypha virginica 1423.1. Mscr.
Croton glandulosum 1425.7
- - - - - balsamiferum L.Mant. 125. Mscr.
- - - - - reticulatum Mscr. fig. pict.
- - - - - virgatum Mscr.
Jatropha Manihot 1429.5
- - - - - - Janipha L.Mant.125. Mscr. f.p. fruct.
- - - - - - urens 1429.6
Ricinus communis 1430.1
Momordica Balsamina 1433.1
Cucumis Anguria 1436.3
- - - - - - sativus
Cucurbita Pepo 1435.2
- - - - - - Citrullus 1435.5

Dioecia
Cecropia peltata 1449.1
Smilax macrophylla Mscr.
- - - - - - oblongata Mscr.
Dioscoraea subenervia Mscr.
Alchornea rigida Mscr. fig. pict.

Polygamia
Andropogon lanatum Mscr.
- - - - - - - - - bicorne 1482.12. Mscr.
- - - - - - - - - polydactylon 1483.18. Mscr.
- - - - - - - - - virgatum Mscr.
Cenchrus setosus Mscr.
- - - - - - - - - tribuloides 1489.5
Celtis asperrima Mscr. f. p.
Clusia dodecapetala Mscr. fig. pict.
Begonia obliqua 1487.1
Mimosa tortuosa 1505.13
- - - - - pavonina **Mscr.**
- - - - - polyphylla **Mscr.**
- - - - - pigra 1507.37. **Mscr.**

**Cryptogamia**
Ophioglossum scandens 1518.6. **f.p.**
Osmunda adiantifolia 1520.7
Acrostichum aureum 1525.12
Pteris dichotoma **Mscr.** **f.p.**
- - - - ciliata **Mscr.** **f.p.**
Asplenium glabratum **Mscr.** **f.p.**
Polypodium reptans **Mscr.**
- - - - - - - - - plumosum **Mscr.**
- - - - - - - - - reticulatum 1549.34. **f.p.**
Adiantum radiatum 1556.8
Lichen prunastri 1614.39
- - - - compressus **Mscr.**

**Palmae**
Cocos nucifera
Bactris minor L. Mant. 137. **Mscr.**
8. do it but never before saw anything like it before. (this circumstance which by mistake is attributed to this shark belongs to one taken the 11th).

9. A very heavy swell last night and this morn: we Judge that it has blown very hard to the Southward and in this particular think ourselves obligd to the viceroy of Brasil who by his dilatoryness in supplying us kept us out of it, the swell however carried away our fore top galant mast. The sea is today coulrd with infin[it]e small Particles the same as those seen Novr 7th and laying like them in broad streaks.

10. Today also we see large quantities of the same small particles.

11. This morn took a shark who cast up his stomack when hookd or at least appears so to do, it proves to be a female and on being opend 6 young ones were taken out of her, five of which were alive and swam briskly in a tub of water, the 6th was dead and seemd to have been so for some time.

12. Wind fair today, no events.
13. Fair wind today likewise, at night a squall with thunder and lightning which made us hoist the Lightning chain.

14. Wind Foul, blew fresh all day, in the evening saw a sail standing to the northward.

15. Less wind but a great swell.

16. Wind fair.

17. Wind foul, blew rather fresh, so the ship heeld much which made our affairs go on rather uncomfortably.

18. Calm at night, wind to the northward; we began to feel ourselves rather cool tho the thermometer was at 76 and shut two of the Cabbin windows, all which have been open ever since we left Madeira.

19. Charming fair wind and fine weather; the people were employd in preparing a new suit of sails for the bad weather we are to expect. Therm 70.

20. Fair wind today and rather warmer than it has been. During the course of last night we had a very heavy squall which tho it did
20. not last above 10 minutes yet in that time blew as hard as it has done since we have been on board the ship.

21. Foul wind and little of it.

22. This morn quite calm. A very large shoal of Porpoises came close to the ship, they were of a kind different from any I have seen but so large that I dared not throw the gig into any of them, some were 4 yards long, their heads quite round but their hinder parts compressd, they had one fin upon their backs like a porpoise and white lines over their eyes also a spot of white behind the fin; they stayd above 1/2 an hour about the ship. When they were gone Dr Solander and myself went out in the boat and shot one species of Mother Careys chickens and two shearwaters, both provd new, *Procellaria Gigantea* and *sandaliata*. The Carey was one but ill describd by Linnaeus,
22. *Procellaria fregata.* While we were out the people were employed in bending the new set of sails for Cape Horn.

23. This morn calm again: went out shooting, killed another new procellaria, *aequorea,* and many of the sorts we had seen yesterday; caught *Holothuria angustata,* a species of floating helix much smaller than those under the line, *Phyllodoce velella* very small, sometimes not so large as a silver penny ye: I believe the common species; in the evening went out again, killed an albatross *Diomedea exulans,* who measured 9 ft 1 inch between the tips of his wings, and struck one turtle *testudo caretta.*

24. Fair wind and steady tho but little of it.

25. Christmas day; all good Christians that is to say all hands get abominably drunk so that at night there was scarce a sober man in the ship, wind thank god very moderate
25. or the lord knows what would have become of us.

26. Blows fresh today. A vast many birds are about the ship chiefly procellarias, all that we shot last week and one more who is quite Black without spot or speck that can be seen as he flies. Towards even many beds of seaweed came past the ship which the seamen call rockweek, but none near enough to the ship for us to catch them tho we were constantly prepar'd.

27. Blows strong this evening, at night came to under a balanced mizzen till day light when it grows more moderate. The water has been discoulerd all day 50 fathom. All this day I have smelt a singular smell from windward tho the people in the ship did not take notice of it, it was like rotten seaweed and at some times very strong.

During the whole of this gale we had many procellarias about the ship, at some times immense numbers, who seemd perfectly
27. unconcernd at the badness of the weather or the hight of the sea but continued often flapping near the surface of the water as if fishing.

28. Less wind, the sea soon falls; the water both yesterday and today has been a good deal discolourd. Sound and find 48 fathom.

29. Fair wind, water very white, sounded 46 fathom, about 4 in the Even 44. We observd now some feathers and peices of reed to float by the ship which made us get up the hoave net to see what they were; soon after some drowned Carabi and Phalaenae came past which we took and employd the hoave till dark night taking many specimens. Lat. 41:48. This morn a large sphinx came off probably from the land and was taken.
30. This morn fine weather, water whiter than ever almost of a clay colour; sounded 47 fathom. Plenty of insects passd by this morn, many especialy of the carabi, alive, some grylli and one Phalaena. I stayd in the main chaians from 8 till 12 dipping for them with the hoave and took vast numbers. In the evening Many Phalenae and two papilios came flying about the ship, of the first took about 20 but the last would not come near enough to be taken and at last flew away; they appeard Large. We have also both yesterday and today taken several Ichneumons flying about the rigging. All the seamen say that we cannot be less than 20 leagues from the land, but I doubt Grylli especialy coming so far alive as they must float all the way upon the water. They ground their opinion cheifly on the sounding[s] which have
been all along sand of different colours, which had we been nearer the land would have been intermixd with shells; their experience on this coast must however be but slight.

This whole day the evening especialy has been a series of calms and squalls, towards night a thunderstorm in which the lightning was remarkably bright, and rangd in long streaks sometimes horizontal and sometimes perpendicular, the thunder was not loud but continued an immence while with a noise in some claps so like the flapping of sails that had I not been upon dcek I should not have beleivd it to be thunder. Just before the storm we had an appearance of land to the westward which all who had not been in these latitudes before imagind to
30. be real; it made like a long extent of lowish land and two Islands to the Northward of it, the South end was buried in the clouds; this lasted about 1/2 an hour and then rose gradually up and disappeared.

Lat. 42 : 31. A sea lion was entered in the log book of today as being seen but I did not see him. I saw however a whale covered with barnacles as the seamen told me, he appeared of a reddish colour except his tail which was black like those to the Northward.

31. No insects seen today; the water changed to a little better colour. On looking over those taken yesterday find 31 species of land insects all so like in size and shape to those of England &c. that they are scarcely distinguishable, probably some will turn out identically the same. We ran among them 160 miles by the log without reckoning any part of last night, tho they were seen till dark,
31. and most of this southing. Our latitude made us nearly opposite Baye Sans Fond near which place Mr Dalrymple supposes there to be a passage quite through the Continent of America. It should seem by what we have seen that there should be at least a very large river, and that probably at this time much flooded: if even that could have so great an effect as (supposing us to be 20 leagues from the land) discolouring the water to almost a clay Colour and bringing of insects who never fly 20 yards such as grylli and one aranea.

I lament much not having tasted the water at the time which never occurred to me, but probably the difference of saltness would have been hardly perceptible to the taste and my Hydrostatick balance being broke I had no other method of trying it.
JANUARY 1769

1. New years day today made us pass many Compts and talk much of our hopes for success in the year 69. Many whales were about the ship today and much sea weed in large lumps but none near enough to be caught.

In the Evening rather squally; the true sea green colour upon the surface of the water was often to be seen now between the squalls, or rather under the black clouds when they were about half a mile from the ship. I had often heard of it before but never seen it in any such perfection, indeed most of the seamen said the same, it was very bright and perfectly like the stone callld aquamarine.

2. Fresh breezes today. In the Evening, Lat. about 45:30, met with some small shoals of the red lobsters which have been seen by almost every one who has pass’d these seas. They were however so far from couloring the sea red as Dampier and Cowley say that I may affirm that we never saw more than a few hundreds of them at a time, we took however several in the Casting and hoave netts and describd them by the name of Cancer Gregarius.

3. Lat: 47:17, all hands looking out for Pepys’s Island; about observing time an appearance was seen to the westward so like an Island that we bear away after it almost assurd that it is Land as
3. the midshipman at the mast head declard; for half an hour, which time he had steadily lookd at it, it did not alter its appearance at all, however about 4 we were convinced that we were in chace of Cape fly away as the seamen call it, no signs of Island or any thing else appearing where it ought to have been.

This Evening many large bunches of sea weed came by the ship; we caught some of it with hooks, it was of an immense size every leaf 4 feet long and the stalk about twelve, the footstalk of each leaf was swelld into a long air vessel. Mr Gore tells me that he has seen this weed grow quite to the top of the water in 12 fathom, if so the swelld footstalks are probably the trumpet grass or weed of the Cape of Good Hope; we describd it however as it appeard and calld it *Fucus Giganteus*. Here were also this Evening large quantities of a small bird somewhat like Mother Careys chickens but rather larger and grey on the back, and plenty of Albatrosses indeed we have seen more or less of them every day for some time.

4. Blew fresh today and night: the officer of the watch told me that in the night the sea
4. was very much illuminated in patches of many Yards wide which appeard of a pale light colour.

5. Fair wind: the sea very light at night more so than ever I had seen it, so that the ships course and every curl of a wave was of a light colour, but none of the light patches seen last night were now observd, which were cheifly remarkable as the animals there must have shone without being agitated. In some of the water taken up observd a small insect of a conical figure, very nimble, who movd himself with a kind of whorl of legs or tentacula round the base of the cone; we could not find any nereides or indeed any other insect than this in the water but were not able to prove that he causes the light so deferrd our observations on him till the morning.

6. Blew fresh foul wind, forcd to throw away the insects taken last night from the ship having so much motion. The Southeast wind now became very cold, to us at least so lately come from the Torrid Zone. Therm at noon 48. All hands bend their Magellan Jackets (made of a thick woolen stuff allowd them by the goverment calld fearnought) and myself put on flannel Jacket and waistcoat and thick trousers.
6. In the Evening blew strong, at night a hard gale, ship brought too under a mainsail; during the course of this my Bureau was overset and most of the books were about the Cabbin floor, so that with the noise of the ship working, the books &c. running about, and the strokes our cotts or swinging beds gave against the top and sides of the Cabbin we spent a very disagreeable night. We this morn expected to have made Falklands Islands where we intended to put in for a small time, so the missing of them which we much fear was a great disappointment to me, as I fear I shall not now have a single oppertunity of observing the produce of this part of the world.

7. Blew strong, yet the ship still Laying too, now for the first time saw some of the Birds calld Penguins by the southern navigators; they seem much of the size and not unlike *alca pica* but are easily known by streaks upon their faces and their remarkably shrill cry different from any sea bird I am acquainted with. We saw also several seals but much smaller than those which I have seen in Newfoundland and black, they generaly appeard in lively action leaping out of the water like porpoises, so much
so that some of our people were deceived by them mistaking them for fish.

About noon weather much more moderate; set the lower sails; before night sea quite down tho the wind still stood at south east. The sea rises and falls quicker in these latitudes than it does about England, which we have observed ever since we came into variable winds way to the South of the tropicks. During this whole gale we observed vast plenty of birds about us, Procellarias of all the kinds we have before mentioned, the grey ones of the 3d of this month and a kind? all black, *procell. aquinoctialis*? Linn. but could not discern whether or not their beaks were yellow, and plenty of Albatrosses; indeed I have generally observed a much greater quantity of birds upon wing in gales of wind than in moderate weather, owing perhaps to the tossing of the waves which must render swimming very uneasy; in this situation they must be oftener seen than when they set on the water.

The ship during this gale has shewn her excellence in laying too remarkably well, shipping scarce any water tho it blew at times vastly strong; the seamen in general say that they never knew a ship lay too so well as this does, so lively
7. and at the same time so easy.

8. Smooth water and fair wind: many Seals and Penguins about the ship, the latter leaping out of the water and diving instantly so that a person unusd to them might easily be deceivd and take them for fish; plenty also of Albatrosses and whales blowing very near the ship. We were now too sure that we had missd Fauklands Islands and probably were to the Westward of them.

The ship has been observd to go much better since her shaking in the last gale of wind, the seamen say that it is a general observation that ships go better for being what they call Loosnen in their Joints, so much so that in chase it is often customary to knock down Stantions &c. and make the ship as loose as possible.

9. Clouds to the westward appear so like land this morn that even our first Lieutenant who prided himself on His judgement in this particular was deceivd. Wind vereable and calmer, many seals and some Albatrosses but none of those whitish birds which we saw in the gale of wind.

10. Fine weather: Seals plentifully today and a kind of birds different from any we have before seen, they were black and a little larger than pidgeons, plump like them and easily known by their flapping their wings quick as they fly contrary to the custom of sea birds in general. This evening a shoal of Porpoises
10. swam by the ship different from any I have seen, spotted with large dabbs of white and white under the belly, in other respects as swimming &c. like common porpoises only they leap rather more nimbly, sometimes lifting their whole bodys out of the water.

11. This morn at day break saw the land of Terra del Fuego, by 8 O’Clock we were well in with it, the weather exceedingly moderate. Its appearance was not near so barren as the writer of Ld Ansons voyage has represented it, the weather exceedingly moderate so we stood along shore about 2 Leagues off, we could see trees distinctly through our glasses and observe several smokes made probably by the natives as a signal to us. The captain now resolved to put in here if he can find a conv[en]ient harbour and give us an opportunity of searching a countrey so intirely new.

The hills within land seemd to be high and on them were many patches of snow, but the sea coast appeard fertile especialy the trees of a bright verdure, except in places exposd to SW wind which were distinguishable by their brown appearance; the shore itself sometimes beach and sometimes rock. At 4 in the evening wind came on shore so stood off.
12. This morn make the land again soon after which it dropd calm, in which time we took *Beroe incrassata*, *Medusa limpidissima* and *plicata* and *obliquata*, *Alcyonium anguillare*, probably the thing that Shelvocke mentions in his Voyage round the world page 60, *Alcyonium frustrum*. After dinner a small breeze sprung up and to our great Joy we discoverd an opening into the land and stood in for it in great hopes of finding a harbour; however after having ran within a mile of the shore were obliged to stand off again as there was no appearance of shelter and the wind was on shore.

When we were nearest in we could plainly discover with our glasses spots in which the colour of white and yellow were predominant which we judg’d to be flowers, the white were in large clusters almost every where, the yellow in small spots or patches on the side of a hill coverd with a beautifull verdure; the trees could now be distinguishd very plainly and seemd to be 30 or 40 feet high with flat bushy tops, their trunks in many places were bare and resembled rocks a good deal till the glasses cleard up the deception.
12. Among the things taken today observd *ulva intestinalis* and *corallina officinalis*. The wind very vereable all day, at nine this even the Three Brothers and Sugar Loaf were in sight and we stood gently along shore in hopes to be at the streights mouth by the Morning.

About 6 this even the gentlemen upon deck observd the Sugar Loaf coverd with a cloud for a short time which left it intirely white, they judgd it to have been a fall of snow upon the hill but as I did not myself see it I cannot give my opinion.

13. This morn at day break we were at the streights mouth and stood in a little way, but the tide turning against us soon set us out again; at 1/2 past 8 tide again turnd in our favour but soon after wind came foul so were forcd to turn to windward; the wind soon freshning made us pitch most violently, so much that our Gib netting was quite under water. At 12 today Lat: 54:42. Staten land is much more craggy than Terra del Fuego tho the view of it in Ld Ansons Voyage is exaggerated. About 4 it blew very hard and the tide turning against us quickly drove us out of the streights the second time. At night less wind tho still South West, stood into the Streights the third time and had another violent pitching bout, the tide turnd
13. against us before we are half through so in the morning.

14. we found ourselves the third time drove out, wind SSW, Short sea and ship pitching most violently. The Captn stood into a bay just without Cape St Vincent and while the ship plyd off and on Dr Solander and myself went ashore in the boat and found many plants, about 100, tho we were not ashore above 4 hours; of these I may say every one was new and intirely different from what either of us had before seen. The countrey about this bay was in general flat, here is however good wood and water and vast plenty of fowl and in the cod of the bay a flat coverd with grass where much hay might be made. The bay itself is bad affording but little shelter for shipping and in many Parts of it the bottom rocky and foul. This however may be always known in these Countreys by the beds of Fucus Giganteus which constantly grow upon the rock and are not seen on sand or owse; they are of an immence lengh, we sounded upon them and had 14 fathom water; as they seem to make a very acute angle with the bottom in their situation on the water it is difficult to guess how long they
14. may be, but probably they are not less than one half longer than the depth of the water, which gives their length to be 126 feet, a wonderful length for a stalk not thicker than a man's thumb.

Among other things the bay affords there is plenty of winters bark, easy to be known by its broad leaf like a laurel of a light green colour and blueish underneath, the bark is easily stripped off with a bone or stick as ours are barked in England; its virtues are so well known that I shall say little except that it may be used as a spice even in culinary matters and is found to be very wholesome. Here is also plenty of wild celery *apium antescorbuticum*, scurvy grass *cardamine antescorbutica*, both which are as pleasant to the taste as any herbs of the kind found in Europe and I believe possess as much virtue in curing the scurvy.

The trees here are chiefly of one sort, a Kind of Birch *Betula antarctica* with very small leaves, it is a light white wood and cleaves very straight; sometimes the trees are 2 or 3 feet in diameter and run 30 or 40 feet in the bole; possibly they might in cases of necessity supply topmasts. Here are also great plenty of cranberries both white and red, *Arbutus rigida*. 
14. Inhabitants I saw none but found their hutts in two places, once in a thick wood and again close by the beach; they are most unartifically made, Conical but open on one side where was marks of fire so that probably the fire servd them instead of a door.

15. Stopd tide this morn in a bay on the Terra del Fuego side of the water, probably Prince Maurice’s Bay, which servd our purpose very well; at 10 tide turnd and we stood out and by dinner came to an anchor in the Bay of Good Success. Several Indians were in sight near the Shore.

After dinner went ashore on the starboard side of the bay near some rocks which make smooth water and good landing. Before we had walkd 100 yards many Indians made their appearance on the other side of the bay, at the End of a sandy beach which makes the bottom of the bay, but on seeing our numbers to be ten or twelve they retreated. Dr Solander and myself then walkd forward 100 yards before the rest and two of the Indians advanc’d also and set themselves down about 50 yards from their companions. As soon as we came up they rose and each of them threw a stick he had in
15. his hand away from him and us, a token no doubt of peace, they then walk’d briskly towards the other party and wav’d to us to follow, which we did and were receiv’d with many uncouth signs of freindship. We distributed among them a number of Beads and ribbands which we had brought ashore for that purpose at which they seem’d mightily pleas’d, so much so that when we embark’d again aboard our boat three of them came with us and went aboard the ship. Of these one seem’d to be a Preist or conjuror or at least we thought him to be one by the noises he made, possibly exorcising every part of the ship he came into, for when any thing new caught his attention he shouted as loud as he could for some minutes without directing his speech either to us or to any one of his countreymen.

They eat bread and beef which we gave them tho not heartily but carried the largest part away with them, they would not drink either wine or spirits but return’d the glass, tho not before they had put it to their mouths and tasted a drop; we conducted them through the greatest part of the ship and they lookd at
15. every thing without any marks of extraordinary
admiration, unless the noise which our conjurer did
not fail to repeat at every new thing he saw might be
reckond as such.

After having been aboard about 2 hours they expressd
a desire of going ashore and a boat was orderd to
carry them. I went with them and landed them among
their countreymen, but I can not say that I observd
either the one party curious to ask questions or the
other to relate what they had seen or what usage they
had met with, so after having stayd ashore about 1/2
an hour I returnd to the ship and the Indians
immediately marchd off from the shore.

16. This morn very early Dr Solander and myself with our
servants and two Seamen to assist in carrying
baggage, accompanied by Mses Monkhouse and
Green, set out from the ship to try to penetrate into the
countrey as far as we could, and if possible gain the
tops of the hills where alone we saw places not
overgrown with trees. We began to enter the woods at
a small sandy beach a little to the westward of the
watering place and continued pressing through
pathless thickets, always going up hill, till 3 o’Clock
16. before we gaind even a near view of the places we intended to go to. The weather had all this time been vastly fine much like a sunshiny day in May, so that neither heat nor cold was troublesome to us nor were there any insects to molest us, which made me think the traveling much better than what I had before met with in Newfoundland.

Soon after we saw the plains we arrivd at them, but found to our great disapointment that what we took for swathe was no better than low bushes of birch about reaching a mans middle; these were so stubborn that they could not be bent out of the way, but at every step the leg must be lifted over them and on being plac’d again on the ground was almost sure to sink above the anckles in bog. No traveling could possibly be worse than this which seemd to last about a mile, beyond which we expected to meet with bare rock, for such we had seen from the tops of lower hills as we came: this I particularly was infinitely eager to arrive at expecting there to find the alpine plants of a countrey so curious. Our people tho rather fatigued were yet in good spirits so we pushd on intending to rest
16. ourselves as soon as we should arrive at plain ground.

We proceeded two thirds of the way without the least difficulty and I confess I thought for my own part that all difficulties were surmounted when Mr Buchan fell into a fit. A fire was immediately lit for him and with him all those who were most tird remaind behind, while Dr Solander Mr Green Mr Monkhouse and myself advanced for the alp which we reachd almost immediately, and found according to expectation plants which answerd to those we had found before as alpine ones in Europe do to those which we find in the plains.

The air was here very cold and we had frequent snow blasts. I had now intirely given over all thoughts of reaching the ship that night and though[t] of nothing but getting into the thick of the wood and making a fire, which as our road lay all down hill seemd very easy to accomplish, so Mrs Green and Monkhouse returnd to the people and appointed a hill for our general rendevous from whence we should proceed and build our wigwam. The cold now increased apace, it might be near 8 O’Clock
16. tho yet exceedingly good daylight so we proceeded for the nearest valley, where the short Birch, the only thing we now dreaded, could not be 1/2 a mile over. Our people seemd well tho cold and Mr Buchan was stronger than we could have expected. I undertook to bring up the rear and se[e] that no one was left behind. We passd about half way very well when the cold seemd to have at once an effect infinitely beyond what I have ever experienced. Dr Solander was the first who felt it, he said he could not go any farther but must lay down, tho the ground was coverd with snow, and down he laid notwithstanding all I could say to the contrary. Richmond a black Servant now began also to lag and was much in the same way as the dr: at this Juncture I dispatchd 5 forwards of whom Mr Buchan was one to make ready a fire at the very first convenient place they could find, while myself with 4 more staid behind to persuade if possible the dr and Richmond to come on. With much persuasion and intreaty we got through much the largest part of the Birch when they both gave out; Richmond said that he could not
16. go any further and when told that if he did not he must be Froze to death only answerd that there he would lay and dye; the Dr on the contrary said that he must sleep a little before he could go on and actualy did full a quarter of an hour, at which time we had the welcome news of a fire being lit about a quarter of a mile ahead. I then undertook to make the Dr Proceed to it; finding it impossible to make Richmond stir left two hands with him who seemd the least affected with Cold, promising to send two to releive them as soon as I should reach the fire. With much difficulty I got the Dr to it and as soon as two people were sufficiently warmd sent them out in hopes that they would bring Richmond and the rest; after staying about half an hour they returnd bringing word that they had been all round the place shouting and hallowing but could not get any answer. We now guess’d the cause of the mischeif, a bottle of rum the whole of our stock was missing, and we soon concluded that it was in one of their Knapsacks and that the two who were left in health had drank immoderately of it and had slept like the other.
16. For two hours now it had snowd almost incessantly so we had little hopes of seeing any of the three alive: about 12 however to our great Joy we heard a shouting, on which myself and 4 more went out immediately and found it to be the Seaman who had wakd almost starvd to death and come a little way from where he lay. Him I sent back to the fire and proceeded by his direction to find the other two, Richmond was upon his leggs but not able to walk the other lay on the ground as insensible as a stone. We immediately calld all hands from the fire and attempted by all the means we could contrive to bring them down but finding it absolutely impossible, the road was so bad and the night so dark that we could scarcely ourselves get on nor did we without many Falls. We would then have lit a fire upon the spot but the snow on the ground as well as that which continualy fell renderd that as impracticable as the other, and to bring fire from the other place was also impossible from the quantity of snow which fell every moment from the branches of the trees; so we were forc’d to content ourselves
16. with laying out our unfortunate companions upon a bed of boughs and covering them over with boughs also as thick as we were able, and thus we left them hopeless of ever seeing them again alive which indeed we never did.

In these employments we had spent an hour and a half expos’d to the most penetrating cold I ever felt as well as continual snow. Peter Briscoe, another servant of mine, began now to complain and before we came to the fire became very ill but got there at last almost dead with cold.

Now might our situation truely be call’d terrible: of twelve our original number 2 were already past all hopes, one more was so ill that tho he was with us I had little hopes of his being able to walk in the morning, and another very likely to relapse into his fitts either before we set out or in the course of our journey: we were distant from the ship we did not know how far, we knew only that we had been the greatest past of a day in walking it through pathless woods: provision we had none but one vulture which had been shot while we were out, and
16. at the shortest allowance could not furnish half a meal: and to compleat our misfortunes we were caught in a snow storm in a climate we were utterly unaquainted with but which we had reason to beleive was as inhospitable as any in the world, not only from all the accounts we had heard or read but from the Quantity of snow which we saw falling, tho it was very little after midsummer: a circumstance unheard of in Europe for even in Norway or Lapland snow is never known to fall in the summer.

17. The Morning now dawnd and shewd us the earth coverd with snow as well as all the tops of the trees, nor were the snow squalls at all less Frequent for seldom many minutes were fair together; we had no hopes now but of staying here as long as the snow lasted and how long that would be God alone knew.

About 6 O’Clock the sun came out a little and we immediately thought of sending to see whether the poor wretches we had been so anzious about last night were yet alive, three of our people went but soon returnd with the melancholy news of their being both dead.
17. The snow continued to fall tho not quite so thick as it had done; about 8 a small breeze of wind sprung up and with the additional power of the sun began (to our great Joy) to clear the air, and soon after we saw the snow begin to fall from the tops of the trees, a sure sign of an aproaching thaw. Peter continued very ill but said he thought himself able to walk. Mr Buchan thank god was much better than I could have expected, so we agreed to dress our vulture and prepare ourselves to set out for the ship as soon as the snow should be a little more gone off: so he was skinnd and cut into ten equal shares, every man cooking his own share which furnishd about 3 mouthfulls of hot meat, all the refreshment we had had since our cold dinner yesterday and all we were to expect till we should come to the ship.

About ten we set out and after a march of about 3 hours arrivd at the beach fortunate in having met with much better roads in our return than we did in going out, as well as in being nearer to the ship than we had any reason to hope; for on reviewing
17. our track as well as we could from the ship we found that we had made a half circle round the hills, instead of penetrating as we thought we had done into the inner part of the country. With what pleasure then did we congratulate each other on our safety no one can tell who has not been in such circumstances.

18. Peter was very ill today and Mr Buchan not at all well, the rest of us thank god in good health tho not yet recoverd from our fatigue.

It blew fresh without and made such a heaving swell in the bay that no one could go ashore and even the ship was very uncumfortable, rolling so much that one could scarcely stand without holding.

19. The swell still continued and we were again hinderd from going ashore tho the loss of two days out of the short time we had to stay here made the Dr and myself ready to venture any risk. The officer who was sent to attempt landing returnd bringing word that it was absolutely impossible without great danger of staving the boat, if even that would do. Both yesterday and today a good deal of snow fell in squalls.

20. Last night the weather began to moderate
20. And this morn was very fine, so much so that we landed without any difficulty in the bottom of the bay and spent our time very much to our satisfaction in collecting shells and plants. Of the former we found some very scarce and fine particularly limpets of several species: of these we observd as well as the shortness of our time would permit that the limpet with a longish hole at the top of his shell is inhabited by an animal very different from those which have no such holes. Here were also some fine whelks, one particularly with a long tooth, and infinite variety of Lepades, Sertularias, Onisci &c &c &c much greater variety than I have any where seen, but the shortness of our time would not allow us to examine them so we were obligd to content ourselves with taking specimens of as many of them as we could in so short a time scrape together.

We returnd on board to dinner and afterwards went into the Countrey about two miles to see an Indian town which some of our people had given us intelligence
20. of; we arrived at it in about an hour walking through a path which I suppose was their common road tho it was sometimes up to our knees in mud. The town itself was situate upon a dry Knowl among the trees, which were not at all cleard away, it consisted of not more than twelve or fourteen huts or wigwams of the most unartificial construction imaginable, indeed nothing bearing the name of a hut could possibly be built with less trouble. They consisted of a few poles set up and meeting together at the top in a conical figure, these were coverd on the weather side with a few boughs and a little grass, on the lee side about one eighth part of the circle was left open and against this opening was a fire made. Furniture I may justly say they had none: a little, very little dry grass laid round the edges of the circle furnishd both beds and chairs, and for dressing their shell Fish (the only provision I saw them make use of) they had no one contrivance but broiling them upon the Coals. For drinking indeed I saw in a corner of one of their hutts
20. a bladder of some beast full of water: in one side of this near the top was a hole through which they drank by elevating a little the bottom which made the water spring up into their mouths.

In these few hutts and with this small share or rather none at all of what we call the nescessaries and conveniences of life livd about 50 men women and children, to all appearance contented with what they had nor wishing for any thing we could give them except beads; of these they were very fond preferring ornamental things to those which might be of real use and giving more in exchange for a string of Beids than they would for a knife or a hatchet.

Daily Log continues on Log page 171

[Account of Terra del Fuego]

As this is to be the last time of our going ashore on this Island I take this opportunity to give an account of such things the shortness of my stay allowd me to observe.

Notwithstanding almost all writers who have mentiond this Island have imputed to it a want of wood, soon after we first saw it even at the distance of some leagues, we plainly distinguish’d that the largest part
of the countrey particularly near the sea coast was covered with wood, which observation was verified in both the bays we put into, in either of which firing might have been got close by the beach in any quantity, and some trees which to all appearance might be fit for repairing a vessel or even in case of necessity to make masts.

The hills are high tho not to be call’d mountains, the tops of these however are quite bare and on them frequent patches of snow were to be seen, tho the time of the year when we were there answerd to the beginning of July in England. In the valleys between these the Soil has much the appearance of Fruitfullness and is in some places of a considerable depth; at the bottom of almost every one of these runs a brook the water of which in general has a reddish Cast like that which runs through turf bogs in England but is very well tasted.

Quadrupeds I saw none in the Island, exept the Seals and Sea lions which we often saw swimming about in the bay might be call’d such, but Dr Solander and myself when we were on the top of the highest hill we
were upon observ’d the footsteps of a large beast imprinted on the surface of a bog, but could not with any probability guess of what kind it might be.

Land birds there are very Few. I saw none larger than an English blackbird except hawks and a vulture, but water fowl are much more plentyfull; in the first bay we were in I might have shot any quantity of ducks or geese but would not spare the time from gathering plants. In the other we shot some but probably the Indians in the neighbourhood had made them shy as well as much less plentiful, at least so we found them.

Fish we saw few nor could with our hooks take any fit to eat. Shell fish however are in the greatest abundance, limpits, muscles, Clams &c. none of them delicate yet such as they were we did not despise them.

Insects there are very few and not one species either hurtfull or troublesome; all the time we have been here we have seen neither gnat nor musquito a circumstance which few if any uncleard countrey but this
Of Plants here are many species and those truly the most extraordinary I can imagine, in stature and appearance they agree a good deal with the European ones only in general are less specious, white flowers being much more common among them than any other colours. But to speak of them botanically, probably no botanist has ever enjoyed more pleasure in the contemplation of his favourite pursuit than Dr Solander and myself among these plants; we have not yet examined many of them, but what we have have turned out in general so entirely different from any before described that we are never tired with wondering at the infinite variety of Creation, and admiring the infinite care with which providence has multiplied his productions suiting them no doubt to the various climates for which they were designed. Trees here are very few, Birch *Betula antarctica*, Beach *Fagus antarctica*, winters bark *Winterana aromatic* a, the two first for timber the other for its excellent aromatic bark so much valued by Physicians are all worth mentioning; and of Plants we could not ascertain the virtues not being able to converse with the Indians who may have experienced them, but the Scurvy grass *Cardamine antescorbutica* and wild Celery *Apium*
antarcticum may easily be known to contain antescorbutick virtues capable of being of great service to ships who may in futurity touch here. Of these two therefore I shall give a short description. *Scurvy grass* is found plentifully in damp places near springs, in general every where near the beach especialy at the watering place in the Bay of Good Success; when young and in its greatest perfection it lays flat on the ground, having many bright green leaves standing in pairs opposite each other with an odd one at the end which makes in general the 5th on a footstalk; after this it shoots up in stalks sometimes 2 feet high at the top of which are small white blosoms which are succeeded by long podds. The whole plant much resembles that that is calld Ladys Smock or Cuckold flower in England only that the flowers are much smaller. *Wild Celery* resembles much the Celery in our gardens only that the leaves are of a deeper green, the flowers like it stand in small tufts at the tops of the Branches and are white; it grows plentifully near the Beach, generaly in the first soil which is above spring tides, and is not easily mistaken as the taste resembles
Celery or parsley or rather is between. Both these herbs we us’d plentifully while we stayd here putting them in our soup &c, and found the benefit from them which seamen in general find from vegetable diet after having been long deprivd of it.

The inhabitants we saw here seemd to be one small tribe of Indians consisting of not more than 50 of all ages and sexes. They are of a reddish Colour nearly resembling that of rusty iron mixd with oil: the men large built but very clumsey, their hight from 5ft8 to 5ft10 nearly and all very much of the same size, the women much less seldom exceeding 5ft. Their Cloaths are no more than a kind of cloak of Guanicoe or seal skin thrown loose over their shoulders and reaching down nearly to their knees; under this they have nothing at all nor any thing to cover their feet, except a few of them had shoes of raw seal hide drawn loosely round their instep like a purse. In this dress there is no distinction between men and women, except that the latter have their cloak tied round their middle with a kind of belt or thong and a small flap of leather hanging like Eve’s fig leaf over those parts which nature teaches them to hide; which precept tho she has taught to them she seems intirely to have omitted with
the men, for they continualy expose those parts to the view of strangers with a carelessness which thoroughly proves them to have no regard to that kind of decency.

Their ornaments of which they are extreemly fond consist of necklaces or rather Solitaires of shells and braceletts which the women wear both on their wrists and legs, the men only on their wrists, but to compensate for the want of the other they have a kind of wreath of brown worsted which they wear over their Foreheads so that in reality they are more ornamented than the women.

They paint their faces generaly in horizontal lines just under their eyes and sometimes make the whole region of their eyes white, but these marks are so much varied that no two we saw were alike: whether as marks of distinction or mere ornaments I could not at all make out.

They seem also to paint themselves with something like a mixture of grease and soot for particular occasions, as when we went to their town there came two out to meet us who were dawb’d with black lines all manner of ways so as to form the most diabolical countenance imaginable, and these two seemd to exorcise us or at least made a loud and long harangue which did
not seem to be address’d either to us or any of their countreymen.

Their language is guttural especialy in some particular words which they seem to express much as an Englishman when he hawks to clear his throat, but they have many words that sound soft enough. During our stay among them I could learn but two of their words, *Nalleca* which signified beads, at least so they always said when they wanted them instead of the ribbands or other trifles which I offered them, and *oouda* which signified water, or so they said when we took them ashore from the ship and by signs ask’d where water was: oouda was their answer, making the sign of drinking and pointing to our casks as well as to the place where we put them ashore and found plenty of water.

Of Civil goverment I saw no signs, no one seemd to be more respected than another nor did I ever see the least appearance of Quarreling or words between any two of them. Religion also they seemd to be without, unless those people who made strange noises that I have mentiond before were preists or exorcisers which opinion is merely conjectural.

Their food at least what we saw them make use of was either Seals or shell fish. How they took the former we never saw but the latter
were collected by the women, whose business it seemd to be to attend at low water with a basket in one hand, a stick with a point and barb in the other, and a satchel on their backs which they filld with shell fish, loosning the limpits with the stick and putting them into the basket which when full was emty’d into the satchel.

Their arms consisted of Bows and arrows, the former neatly enough made the latter neater than any I have seen, polishd to the highest degree and headed either with glass or flint very neatly; but this was the only neat thing they had and the only thing they seemd to take any pains about. Their houses which I have describd before are the most miserable ones imaginable and furniture they have none.

That these people have before had intercourse with Europaeans was very plain from many instances: first from the Europaean Commodities of which we saw Sail Cloth, Brown woolen Cloth, Beads, nails, Glass &c, and of them especialy the last (which they used for pointing their arrows) a considerable quantity; from the confidence they immediately put in us at our first meeting
tho well acquainted with our superiority; and from the knowledge they had of the use of our guns which they very soon shewd, making signs to me to shoot a seal who was following us in the boat which carried them ashore from the ship. They probably travel and stay but a short time at a place, so at least it should seem from the badness of their houses which seem entirely built to stand but for a short time; from their having no kind of household furniture but what has a handle adapted to it either to be carried in the hand or on the back; from the thinness of their Cloathing which seems little calculated even to bear the summers of this countrey much less the winters; from their food of shell fish which must soon be exhausted at any one place; and from the deserted huts we saw in the first bay we came to where people had plainly been but a short time before, probably this spring.

Boats they had none with them but as they were not sea sick or particularly affected when they came onboard our ship, possibly they might be left at some bay or inlet which
passes partly but not all the way through this Island from the Streights of Magellan, from which place I should be much inclind to beleive these people have come as so few ships before us have anchord upon any part of Terra del Fuego,

Their dogs which I forgot to mention seem also to indicate a commerce had some time or other with Europaeans, they being all of the kind that bark, contrary to what has been observd of (I beleive) all dogs natives of America.

The weather here has been very uncertain tho in general extreemly bad: every day since the first more or less snow has fallen and yet the glass has never been below 38: unseasonable as this weather seems to be in the middle of summer I am inclind to think it is generaly so here, for none of the plants appear at all affected by it, and the insects who hide themselves during the time a snow blast lasts are the instant it is fair again as lively and nimble as the finest weather could make them.
Diandria
A. Lasiocarpus humilis Mscr. fig. pict.
A. Pinguicula alpina Linn. fig. pict.

Triandria
A. Carpha schoenoides Mscr. fig. pict.
   Scirpus setaceus Linn.
A. Phleum alpinum Linn.
   Alopecurus pratensis Linn.
A. Agrostis densa Mscr.
   - - - - - - canina Linn.
A. Aira spicata Linn.
   - - - caespitosa Linn.
A. - - - montana Linn.
A. Poa alpina vivipara Linn.
   - - - pratensis Linn.
A. Festuca pusilla Mscr.
   - - - - - - rubra Linn.
   - - - - - - spadicea Mscr.
   - - - - - - purpurascens Mscr.
   - - - - - - phalaroides Mscr.
Bromus australis Mscr.
Arundo aristata Mscr.
Triticum repens Linn.
A. Orites depressa Mscr. fig. pict.

Tetrandria
A. Drapetes muscosus Mscr. fig. pict.
A. Nertera depressa Mscr. fig. pict.
   Galium debile Mscr.
   - - - - - australis Mscr. fig. pict.
   Plantago polymorpha Mscr. fig. pict.
   Ancistrum decumbens Mscr. fig. pict.
Plants of Terra del Fuego

A. Sagina muscosa Mscr. fig. pict.
   Tillaea pulchella Mscr. fig. pict.

Pentandria
   Myosotis albilora Mscr. fig. pict.
A. Primula antarctica Mscr.
A. Azalea bullata Mscr. fig. pict.
   Celastrus venustus Mscr. fig. pict.
   Ribes antarcticum Mscr. fig. pict.
A. Euparaea amoena Mscr. fig. pict.
A. Chamitis integrefolia Mscr. fig. pict.
A. - - - - - - tricuspidata Mscr. fig. pict.
A. - - - - - - trifurcata Mscr. fig. pict.
A. - - - - - - complicata Mscr. fig. pict.
A. - - - - - - explanata Mscr. fig. pict.
   Scandix clavata Mscr. fig. pict.
   Apium antarcticum Mscr. fig. pict.
   Statice armeria Linn. fig. pict.
A. Drosera uniflora Mscr. fig. pict.

Hexandria
A. Anthericum trifarium Mscr. fig. pict.
   Enargea marginata Mscr. fig. pict.
A. Juncus uniflorus Mscr. fig. pict.
A. - - - - - luridus Mscr. fig. pict.
A. - - - - - Uniglumis Mscr. fig. pict.
A. - - - - - llaniger Mscr.
   Berberis sempervirens Mscr. fig. pict.
   - - - - - lparviflora Mscr. fig. pict.
   Euthalis lucida Mscr. fig. pict.

Octandria
   Epilobium littorale Mscr.
A. Nanodea muscosa Mscr. fig. pict.
Plants of Terra del Fuego

**Decandria**
A. Andromeda humilis *Mscr. fig. pict.*
   Arbutus rigida *Mscr. fig. pict.*
   - - - - - - - - - angustifolia *Mscr. fig. pict.*
A. Arbutus parvifolia *Mscr.*
A. - - - - - - pumila *Mscr. fig. pict.*
   Chrysosplenium elevatum *Mscr. fig. pict.*
   Stellaria flaccida *Mscr. fig. pict.*
   Cerastium flaccidum *Mscr. fig. pict.*

**Dodecandria**
A. Leantria nitida *Mscr. fig. pict.*
   Winterana aromatica *Mscr. fig. pict.*

**Icosandria**
A. Rubus antarcticus *Mscr. fig. pict.*
   Geum littorale *Mscr.*

**Polyandria**
   Ranunculus flaccidus *Mscr. fig. pict.*
   Caltha multicapsularis *Mscr. fig. pict.*
A. - - - - paradoxa *Mscr. fig. pict.*

**Tetradynania**
   Dentaria polyphylla *Mscr. fig. pict.*
   Cardamine antescorbutica *Mscr. fig. pict.*

**Syngenesia**
A. Perdicium sinuatum *Mscr. fig. pict.*
A. - - - - - - laevigatum *Mscr. fig. pict.*
   Leontodon lycodon *Mscr. fig. pict.*
   - - - - - - - - - - pubescens *Mscr. fig. pict.*
A. Crymalaea rigida *Mscr. fig. pict.*
   Cacalia lanuginosa *Mscr. fig. pict.*
   Gnaphalium littorale *Mscr. fig. pict.*
A. Baccharis humifusa *Mscr. fig. pict.*
Plants of Terra del Fuego

Erigeron pauciflorum \textit{Mscr.} fig. pict.
Senecio tricuspidatus \textit{Mscr.} fig. pict.
A. Aster glabratu\textit{s Mscr.} fig. pict.
A. \textit{-- -- -- -- trifurcatus \textit{Mscr.} fig. pict.}
Cineraria purpurascens \textit{Mscr.} fig. pict.
\textit{-- -- -- -- leucanthema \textit{Mscr.} fig. pict.}
Bellis revoluta \textit{Mscr.} fig. pict.
A. Cotula reptan\textit{s Mscr.} fig. pict.
Amellus candidus \textit{Mscr.} fig. pict.
A. Lobelia reptan\textit{s \textit{Mscr.} fig. pict.}
Viola palustris \textit{Linn.}

Gynandria
Arethusa trifolia \textit{Mscr.} fig. pict.

Monoecia
Carex spicata \textit{Mscr.}
\textit{-- -- -- -- atrata \textit{Linn.}}
\textit{-- -- -- -- caespitosa \textit{Linn.}}
A. Betula antarctica \textit{Mscr.} fig. pict.
A. Fagus antarctica \textit{Mscr.} fig. pict.

Dioecia
A. Dysemone integrifolia \textit{Mscr.} fig. pict.
A. \textit{-- -- -- -- -- -- lobata \textit{Mscr.} fig. pict}
A. Empetrum rubrum \textit{Mscr.} fig. pict.
Myzodendrum planifolium \textit{Mscr.} fig. pict.
\textit{-- -- -- -- -- -- -- punctulatum \textit{Mscr.} fig. pict.}
A. Chortodaea ensata \textit{Mscr.} fig. pict.

Polygamia
Holcus redolens \textit{Mscr.}

Cryptogamia
Osmunda lunaria \textit{Linn.}
\textit{-- -- -- -- -- -- spicant \textit{Linn.}}
Asplenium ruta-muraria \textit{Linn.}
Polypodium paleaceum \textit{Mscr.} fig. pict.
- - - - - - - - - fragile \textit{Linn.}
Trichomanes pygidiforme \textit{Linn.}
A. Lycopodium glabellum \textit{Mscr.} fig. pict.
A. Sphagnum palustre \textit{Linn.}
Polytrichum commune \textit{Linn.}
- - - - - - - - urnigerum \textit{Linn.}
Mnium hygrometricum \textit{Linn.}
Bryum striatum \textit{Linn.}
- - - - - - - - pomiforme \textit{Linn.}
- - - - - subulatum \textit{Linn.}
- - - - - mucronatum \textit{Mscr.}
- - - - - scoparium \textit{Linn.}
- - - - - viridulum \textit{Linn.}
- - - - - urceolatum \textit{Mscr.}
- - - - - angulatum \textit{Mscr.}
- - - - - pulvinatum \textit{Linn.}
Hypnum rutabulum \textit{Linn.}
- - - - - squarrosum \textit{Linn.}
- - - - - fruticulosum \textit{Mscr.}
Jungermannia pilosa \textit{Mscr.}
Marchantia polymorpha \textit{Linn.}
Lichen littoreus \textit{Mscr.}
- - - - - tenax \textit{Mscr.}
- - - - - aridus \textit{Mscr.}
- - - - - parietinus \textit{Linn.}
- - - - - physodes \textit{Linn.}
- - - - - fraxineus \textit{Linn.}
- - - - - pannosus \textit{Mscr.}
- - - - - antarcticus \textit{Mscr.}
Lichen rangiferinus Linn.
- - - - - uncialis Linn.
- - - - - corniculatus Mscr.
- - - - - pascalis Linn.
- - - - - barbatus Linn.
- - - - - pubescens Linn.
- - - - - annulatus Mscr.
Fucus giganteus Mscr.
Ulva intestinalis Linn.
21. Saild this morn, the wind Foul, but our keeping boxes being full of new plants we little regarded any wind provided it was but moderate enough to let the draughtsmen work, who to do them justice are now so used to the sea that it must blow a gale of wind before they leave off.

22. Weather pleasant but a little cold wind came to the Northward and we get a little westing.

23. At day break this morn there was land almost all round us, which we judged to be Terra del Fuego not far from the streights and attributed the little way we had made to the streng[t]h of the current setting us to the Eastward. Our old Freind the Sugar Loaf was now in sight who seemd to have followd us, for he was certainly much nearer to us now than he was when we saw him last on the other side of the streights.

24. Many Islands about us today: weather very moderate: one of the Islands was surrounded by small pointed rocks standing out of the water like the Needles.

   Ever since we left the streights the albatrosses that have flown about the ship have either been or appeard much larger than those seen before we enterd them, but the weather has
24. never been moderate enough to give us an opportunity of getting out a boat to shoot any of them.

25. Wind today Northwest: stood in with some Islands which were large, we could not tell for certain whether we saw any part of the main. The little Island mentiond yesterday was in view, and beyond that the land made in a bluf head, within which another appeard tho but faintly which was farther to the Southward; possibly that might be Cape Horn, but a fog which overcast it almost immediately after we saw it hinderd our making any material observations upon it, so all we can say is that it was the Southermost land that we saw and does not ill answer to the description [of] Cape Horn given by the French, who place it upon an Island and say that it is composd of two bluff headlands: v. Navigat aux terres australes tom 1. pag. 356.

26. Weather vastly moderate today, wind foul so we were sorry that we had ran away from the land last night.

27. Wind came to the northward and we got some
27. little westing, possibly today we were to the westward of the cape, at least a great swell from the NWt makes it certain that we were to the Southward of it. Many large albatrosses *d. exulans* were about the ship whose backs were very white; at noon a shag *Pelecanus antarcticus* came on board the ship and was taken. Soon after dinner saw an Island to the northward possibly Diego Ramires.

28. Pleasant breezes but a heavy swell from NNW continued and made it likely that we were past the Cape, tho we had made but little westing.

29. Wind still Foul and swell continued; today at noon lat. 59.00.

30. At noon today Lat 60.04: near calm: almost all navigators have met with Easterly winds in this Lat. so we were in hopes to do the same: towards Even wind got to the Southward.

31. Wind SE: stood to the westward with very fine weather.

FEBRUARY 1769

1. Calm this morn: went out in the boat and Killd *Diomedea antarctica, Procellaria antarctica* and *turtur: Diomedaea antarctica* the Black billd albatross is much like the common
1. but differs from him in being scarce half as large and having a bill intirely black. *Procellaria lugens* the Southern shear water differs from the common one in being less and darker colourd on the back, but is easily distinguishd by his flight which is heavy, and two fascia or streaks of white under his wings which are very conspicuous when he flies. *Procellaria turtur* Mother Careys dove is of the peteril kind about the size of a barbary dove, of a light silvery blue upon the back which shines beautifully as he flies which he does very swiftly keeping generaly near the surface of the water; more or less of these birds have been seen very often since we left the lat. of Fauklands Island where in a gale of wind we saw immense quantities of them.

2. This morn calm and Foggy much like the weather on the Banks of Newfoundland; after dinner went in the boat and shot *Procellaria fuliginosa, Turtur, gigantea* and *Fregata.*
2. I saw also a small bird not larger than a blackbird who flew quick flapping his wings like a partridge, but was not able to get a shot at him, probably he was of the *alca* tribe.

3. Calm again: went out and shoot *Diomedaea Exulans* Albatross or Alcatrace, differing from those seen to the Northward of Streights of La Maire in being much larger and often quite white on the back between the wings, tho certainly the same species; *Diomedaea antarctica* Lesser black billed Albatross; *diomedaea profuga* Lesser Albatross with a party coloured bill, differing from the last in few things except the bill the upper and under sides of which were yellow and between them black; and *Procellaria vagabunda*. Therm. 41.

4. Blew brisk today, made some northing and westing; we now began to account ourselves certainly past the cape and the Captain (as in his orders was recommended) resolv’d to stand as far to the westward as the winds will allow him to do. Two crabs were taken today
4. in the cloaths that hang overboard to tow.

I had been unwell these three or four days and today was obligd to keep the Cabbin with a bilious attack, which tho quite slight alarmd me a good deal, as Captn Wallis had in the Streights of Magellan such an attack which he never got the better of throughout the whole voyage.

5. All but calm today: myself a little better than yesterday, well enough to eat part of the Albatrosses shot on the third, which were so good that every body commended and Eat heartily of them tho there was fresh pork upon the table. The way of dressing them is thus: Skin them overnight and soak their carcases in Salt water till morn, then parboil them and throw away the water, then stew them well with very little water and when sufficiently tender serve them up with Savoury sauce.

6. Foul wind, myself something better.

7. Myself better again, in the evening ship made a little westing.

8. Fair wind, blew fresh.
9. Blew fresh all last night which has given us a good deal of westing. This morn some sea weed floated past the ship and my servant declares that he saw a large beetle fly over her: I do not beleive he would deceive me and he certainly knows what a beetle is, as he has these 3 years been often employd in taking them for me.

10. During all last night the ship has pitchd very much so that there has been no sleeping for land men. Today misty with little wind.

11. Fair wind, stand to the westward.

12. Foul wind, but prodigious fine weather and smooth water makes amends to us at least.

13. Wind still Foul and blew fresh, at night a little mended.

14. Wind South, water soon became smooth, at night little wind.

15. Calm this morn: went in the boat and killld *Procellaria velox, Nectris munda* and *fuliginosa*, which two last are a new genus between Procellaria and Diomedea: this we reckon a great acquisition to our bird collection. My stay out today
15. was much shortned by a breeze of wind which brought me aboard by 11 o clock and before night blew very fresh.

16. All last night and this morn it has blown very fresh, wind South, so that we have 3 reefs in the topsails for the first time since we left the streights of La Maire.

17. Blew fresh yet and wind stood, so we went well to the westward. In the evening more moderate; I ventur’d upon deck for the first time and saw several porpoises without any pinna dorsalis, black on the backs, under the belly and on the noses white; also a kind of Albatross different from any I have seen, he being black all over except the head and bill which were white.

18. Fair weather, ship stood NW.

19. Went very slowly through the water tho pleasan[t]ly for the ship had scarcely any motion.

20. Wind still foul but very moderate and the ship almost without motion.

21. Still no swell from the west tho the ship had fresh way through the water. A bird not seen before attended the ship about the size of a pidgeon, black above and light colourd underneath, darting
21. swiftly along the surface of the water in the same manner as I have observd the Nectris to do of which genus he is probably a species.

22. This morn settled rain and scarce any wind, the whole evening small puffs of wind and rain and calms succeeded each other.

23. Calm: went out in the boat, shott Procellaria velox, fuliginosa and velificans. At night wind came to the east tho very little of it, it was however a matter of comfort to have any as we have not had the name of East in the wind since 31st of Janry.

24. At 12 last night the wind settled at NE; this morn found studding Sails set and the ship going at the rate of 7 knottts, no very usual thing with Mrs Endeavour.

25. Almost calm so that we trembled for the continuance of our east wind and soon after noon it left us; at night Rain and dirty weather wind N.

26. Blew fresh, before dinner handed all topsails. Albatrosses began to be much less plentifull than they have been. Lat. 41.8'.

27. Moderate and fine, the weather began to feel soft and comfortable like the spring in England.

28. Weather fine with a pleasant breeze. In the evening a great many Porpoises of a very large size came about the ship; they differ’d from any
28. I have seen before in being very much larger, in having their back fins a great deall higher in proportion, and in every one having a white spot on each side of his face as large as the crown of a hat but of an oval shape.

MARCH 1769

1. Fine weather and very pleasant, began the new month by pulling off an under waistcoat.

2. Rather squally this morn and had been so all night: it did not however blow up to a gale tho the ship had a good deal of motion, indeed I began to hope that we were now so near the peacefull part of the Pacifick ocean that we may almost cease to fear any more gales.

3. Calm: went in the boat and killed *Procellaria velox*, 2 *velificans*, 3 *sordida*, 4 *melanopus*, 5 *lugens*, *agilis* and *Diomedaea exulans*. The Albatross very brown exactly the same as the first I killed, which if I mistake not was nearly in the same latitude on the other side of the continent. Caught *Holothuria obtusata*, *Philodoce velella* exactly the same as those taken on the other side of the continent except in size, which in these did not exceed that of an English sixpence. Also *Dagysa vitrea* the same as that taken off Rio de Janeiro; now however we had an opportunity of seeing its extraordinary manner of breeding which is
3. better to be understood from the drawing than any description I can give; suffice it therefore to say that the whole progeny 15 or 20 in number hung in a chain from one end of the mother, the oldest only or the largest adhering to her and rest to each other.

While in the boat among a large quantity of birds I had killed, 69 in all, caught 2 *Hippoboscas* forest flies, both of one species different from any described. More than probably these belonged to the birds and came off with them from the land. I found also this day a large *Sepia* cuttle fish laying on the water just dead but so pulld to peices by the birds that his Species could not be determind; only this I know that of him was made one of the best soups I ever eat. He was very large, differed from the Europaeans in that his arms instead of being (like them) furnished with suckers were arm'd with a double row of very sharp talons, resembling in shape those of a cat and like them retractable into a sheath of skin from whence they might be thrust at pleasure.

The weather is now become pleas[an]tly warm and the Barnacles upon the ships bottom seemd to be regenerate, very few only of the old ones remaining alive but young ones without
3. number scarce bigger than Lentils.

4. Fine weather, the ship goes 5 knotts without rowling or pitching which she has not done this great while; this we attribute to the empty water cask[s] in the fore hold having been filld with salt water yesterday.

There were several bonitos about the ship or at least fish something like them.

5. Fine weather but foul wind, it now begins to be very hot. Therm. 70 and damp, with prodigious dews at night greater than any I have felt, this renews our uncomfortably damp situation, every thing beginning to mould as it did about the aequinoctial line in the Atlantick.

6. Weather wind and heat continued, dew to night as strong as ever.

7. Wind weather heat and dew as yesterday. No Albatrosses have been seen since the 4th, and for some days before that we had only now and then a single one in sight so conclude we have parted with them for good and all.

8. Rains today with uncommonly large and heavy drops, accompanied with calms and small puffs of wind all round the Compass; in the Evening a SE wind took the ship aback and before night blew brisk.

9. Fine weather wind right aft. A tropick bird was seen by some of the people but myself did not see him.
10. Fine weather continued, wind aft and very pleasant.

11. Wind and weather much the same as yesterday. Tho it had blown a steady breeze of wind these three days no sea at all was up, from whence we began to conclude that we pass’d the Line drawn between the Great South Sea and the Pacifick ocean by the Council of the Royal Society, notwithstanding we are not yet within the tropicks.

12. Wind continued fair but in the even flaggd a little; we began to imagine that it must be the trade, at least if it continues we resolv’d [to] call it so.

13. Almost calm to day tho not quite enough for going out in the boat. I saw a tropick bird for the first time hovering over the ship but flying very high; if my eyes did not deceive me it differd from that describd by Linnaeus, *Phaeton aethereus*, in having the long feathers of his tail red and his crissum black.

Towards even set the servants to work with a dipping net who took *Mimus volutator* and *Phylloco velella*, both exactly the same as those we have seen in the Atlantick ocean. Lat. 30.45, Long. 126.23.45.

14. Very light winds today shifting from South to East: at noon an alarm of Land being seen which proved at night to be no more than a fog bank tho it certainly remaind many hours without any change in its appearance.
14. The tropick birds this Evening made a noise as they flew over the ship not unlike some gulls.

15. All but calm all this day: many tropick birds were about the ship. The sea today was remarkably quiet so that the ship had little or no motion.

This night happen’d an occultation of Saturn by the moon, which Mr Green observ’d but was unlucky in having the weather so cloudy that the observation was good for little or nothing.

16. Calm almost, but the ship stole through this remarkably smooth water so that I do not think it worth while to have a boat hoisted out; by observation to day they find that she has gone these two days much faster than the log which they tell me is very often the case in light winds when the ship goes before them.

Our water which was taken aboard at Terra del Fuego has remaind till this time perfectly good without the least change, an instance which I am told is very rare, especialy as in our case when water is brought from a cold climate into a hot one. This however has stood it without any damage and now drinks as brisk and pleasant as when first taken on board, or better, for the red colour it had at first is subsided and it is now as clear as
16. any English spring water.

17. Most of this day as yesterday almost calm, at night a small breeze came on from ENE so that the ship went 4 knotts.

18. Squally weather all night with heavy rain: this morn much the same, the rain so heavy that the Cabbin was twice baild of more than a bucket full at a time, all which came in at the crevises of the weather quarter window, for there was no leak of any consequence in any other part of the cabbin. The Wind was at N and brought with it a hot damp air which affected (I may safely say) every man in the ship more or less; towards even however it shifted towards the west and was much dryer.

19. Pleasant breeze, ship went N by W. Some flying fish were seen this morn and several procellarias cheifly of the brown sorts as sordida.

20. Very fine as yesterday: many tropick birds were about the ship, as indeed there has been every day since I first mentiond them but still more of them as the weather was finer. Lat. today . Long. . When I look on the charts of these Seas and see our course, which has been Near a streight one at NW since we left Cape Horne,
20. I cannot help wondering that we have not yet seen land. It is however some pleasure to be able to disprove that which does not exist but in the opinions of Theoretical writers, of which sort most are who have wrote any thing about these seas without having themselves been in them. They have generally suppos’d that every foot of sea which they believe no ship had pass’d over to be land, tho’ they had little or nothing to support that opinion but vague reports, many of them mention’d only as such by the very authors who first publish’d them, as for instance the Orange Tree one of the Nassau fleet who being separated from her Companions and drove to the westward reported on her joining them again that she had twice seen the Southern continent; both which places are laid down by Mr Dalrymple many degrees to the eastward of our track, tho’ it is probable that he has put them down as far to the westward as he thought it possible that she could go.

To stren[g]then these weak arguments another Theory has been started which says that it is
20. Necessary that so much of the South sea as the authors of it call land should be so, otherwise this world would not be properly bal[a]nc’d as the quantity of Earth known to be situated in the Northern hemisphere would not have a counterpoise in this. The number of square degrees of their land which we have already chang’d into water sufficiently disproves this, and teaches me at least that till we know how this globe is fix’d in that place which has been since its creation assign’d to it in the general system, we need not be anxious to give reasons how any one part of it counterbalances the rest.

21. Calm this morn: went out in the boat and shot Tropick bird Phaeton erubescens, and Procellaria atrata, velox and sordida. Took Turbo fluitans floating upon the water in the same manner as Helix Janthina, Medusa Porpita exactly like those taken on the other side of the continent, and a small Cimex? which also was taken before but appears to be a larva, if so probably of some animal that lives under water, as I saw many but none that appeard
21. perfect tho they were enough so to propagate their species or copulate at least. In examining the Phaetons found that what appeard to me a black crissus as they flew was no other than their black feet; on them was plenty of a very curious kind of acarus Phaetintis which either was or appeard to be viviparous.

Besides what was shot today there were seen Man of war birds pelecanus aquilus, and a small bird of the Sterna? kind calld by the seamen egg birds, which were white with red beaks about the size of sterna hirundo. Of these I saw several just at night fall who flew very high and followd one another all standing towards the NNW; probably there is land on that point as we were now not far from the Lat and Longitude in which Quiros saw his southermost Islands Incarnation and St Jno Baptist.

22. Fresh breeze of wind today, the ship layd no better than west so we were forcd to give over our hopes on the NNW point. Many man of war birds were about the ship today and some egg birds, I shot 3 of the first but none of them fell onboard
22. the ship. All today the weather very hot and damp, Thermometer 80, which it never was at sea before except in the calms under the line.

23. Most troublesome weather, calms and squalls with very heavy rain but the wind will not stirr. Many Egg birds seen today and some few Tropick.

24. Blew fresh still, wind as foul as ever. The officer of the watch reported that in the middle watch the water from being roughish became on a sudden as smooth as a mill pond, so that the ship from going only 4 knotts at once increas’d to six, tho there was little or no more wind than before this, and a log of wood which was seen to pass by the ship by several people made them beleive that there was land to windward.

At 8 when I came on deck the signs were all gone, I saw however two birds which seemed to be of the sterna? kind both very small, one quite white and another quite black who from their appearance probably could not venture far from Land.

Today by our reckoning we crossed the tropick.
25. Wind continued much the same but more moderate, few or no birds were about the ship but some sea weed was seen by some of the people, only one bed.

This even one of our marines threw himself overboard and was not miss’d till it was much too late even to attempt to recover him. He was a very young man scarce 21 years of age, remarkably quiet and industrious, and to make his exit the more melancholy was drove to the rash resolution by an accident so trifling that it must appear incredible to every body who is not well acquainted with the powerfull effects that shame can work upon young minds.

This day at noon he was sentry at the Cabbin door and while he was on that duty one of the Capts servants being calld away in a hurry left a peice of seal skin in his charge, which it seems he was going to cut up to make tobacco pouches some of which he had promisd to several of the men; the poor young fellow it seems had several times askd him for one, and when refus’d had told
25. him that since he refusd him so trifling a thing he
would if he could steal one from him, this he put in
practise as soon as the skin was given into his charge
and was of course found out immediately as the other
returnd, who was angry and took the peice he had cut
off from him but declard he would not complain to the
officers for so trifling a cause.

In the mean time the fact came to the ears of his
fellow soldiers, who stood up for the honour of their
Core 13 in number so highly that before night, for this
hapned at noon, they drove the young fellow almost
mad by representing his crime in the blackest coulours
as a breach of trust of the worst consequence: a theft
committed by a sentry upon duty they made him think
an inexcusable crime, especialy when the thing stole
was given into his charge: the Sargeant particularly
decld that if the person acgreivd would not complain
he would, for people should not suffer scandal from
the ill behaviour of one. This affected the young
fellow much, he went to his hammock, soon after the
Sargeant went to him calld
25. him and told him to follow him upon deck. He got up and slipping the Sargeant went forward, it was dusk and the people thought he was gone to the head and were not convincd that he was gone over till half an hour after it hapned.

26. This whole day calms succeeded by hard squalls with much rain, which weather the seamen call trolly lollys; the wind went more than once round the Compass which made us hope that we were near the trade at least. Few or no birds and no tropick birds.

27. Weather much like yesterday, no birds, at night a little more setled.

28. Calm today: one tropick bird was seen this morn. After dinner a Shark came the first we had seen in these seas, he greedily took the bait but the line being old broke, very soon he however returnd with the hook and chain hanging out of his mouth but would not take the second bait.

29. Calm again. Bent a new shark line in the even a shark alongside took the bait but broke the new line just as we were going to hoist him in, I am
29. told by the people that common fishing line will never last above a year if ever so much care is taken of it.

30. Some birds and bonitos seen this morn but none after I came upon deck.

31. Pleasant breeze of wind which is the trade: some few tropick birds seen this morn. Myself not quite well a little inflammation in my throat and swelling of the glands.

**APRIL 1769**

1. Something better today. As my complaint has something in it that at least puts me in mind of the scurvy I took up the lemon Juice put up by Dr Hulmes direction and found that which was concentrated by evaporating 6 Galls into less than 2 has kept as well as any thing could do. The small Cagg in which was lemon juice with one fifth of brandy was also very good tho large part of it had leak’d out by some fault in the Cagg; this therefore I began to make use of immediately drinking very weak punch made with it for my common liquor.

2. Many birds today about noon passd by the ship making a noise something like gulls,
2. they were black upon the back and white under the belly probably of the sterna kind; in company with them were 20 or 30 Men of war birds soaring over the flock, probably the whole were in pursuit of a shoal of fish.

3. Several of the same kinds of birds seen today as were seen yesterday, also many Egg-birds; the trade continued to blow fresh with very pleasant weather.

4. At 10 this morn my servant Peter Briscoe saw the Land which we had almost passd by, we stood towards it and found it to be a small Island (Lagoon Island) about 1 1/2 or 2 miles in length. Those who were upon the topmast head distinguishd it to be nearly circular and to have a Lagoon or pool of water in the middle which occupied much the largest part of the Island. About noon we were Close to it within a mile or thereabouts and distinctly saw inhabitants upon it of whom we counted 24. They appeared to us through our glasses to be tall and to have very large heads or possibly much hair upon them, 11 of them walkd along the beach abreast of the ship with each a pole or pike as long again as himself in his hand and every one of them stark naked.
4. and appearing of a brown copper colour; as soon however as the ship had fairly pass’d the Island they retird higher up on the beach and seemd to put on some cloaths or at least cover themselves with something which made them appear of a light colour.

The Island was coverd with trees of many very different verdures; the Palms or Cocoa nut trees we could plainly distinguish particularly two that were amazingly taller than their fellows and at a distance bore a great resemblance to a flag. The land seemd all very low tho at a distance several parts of it appeard high yet when we came near them they provd to be clumps of Palms. Under the shade of these were the houses of the natives in places cleard of all underwood so that pleasanter groves can not be imagind, at least so they appeard to us whose eyes had so long been unus’d to any other objects than water and sky.

After dinner land was again seen which we came up with at sunset; it provd a small Island not more than 3/4 of a mile in lengh but almost round, we ran within less than a mile of it but saw no signs of inhabitants nor any Cocoa nut trees, or indeed any that bore the least resemblance to Palms tho there were
4. many sorts of trees or at least many varieties of verdure.

In the neighbourhood of both this and the other Island were many birds, man of war birds and a small black sort of sternae? with a white spot on his head which the seamen called Noddies but said that they were much smaller than the West Indian Noddies.

While we were near the Island a large fish was taken with a towing line baited with a piece of Pork rind cut like a swallow’s tail the seamen called it a King fish Scomber lanceolatus.

5. Less wind this morn than yesterday with some showers of rain. While we were at dinner word was brought down that there was land in sight from the mast head, and found it a low Island but of much greater extent than either of those seen yesterday being from 10 to 15 leagues in circumference. Myself remained at the mast head the whole evening admiring its extraordinary structure: in shape it appeared to be like a bow the wood and string of which was land and the parts within occupied by a large lake of water, which bore about the same proportion to
5. the land as the void space within the bow does to the string and wood. The string of the bow was a flat beach without any signs of vegetation on it but heaps of sea weed laying in ridges as higher or lower tides had left them; this was 3 or 4 Leagues long and appeared not more than 200 yards wide in any part tho doubtless as flat objects foreshorten themselves so much it might be much more. The Horns or angles of the bow were two large tufts of Cocoa nut trees and much the largest part of its arch was filled up likewise with trees of different heights and appearances, a small part of it however was in my opinion low and like the string. Here some thought there was an opening into the Pool in the center and myself cannot say there was not, indeed it was at so great a distance that all must be conjecture.

Along the low beach or bowstring we saild within less than a league of the shore till sunsett when we judg’d ourselves about half way between the two horns, we then brought too and sounded, 130 fathom of line out and no ground; night which came on here almost instantly after sunset made us lose sight
5. of the land before the line was well hauld in. We then steerd by the sound of the breakers which were very distinctly heard in the ship till we were clear of all.

That this land was inhabited appeard clearly by three smoaks in different parts of the Island which we saw repeated several different times, probably as signals from one to the other of our aproach. Our 2nd Lieutenant affirmed that he saw from the deck many inhabitants in the first clump of Trees, that they were walking to and fro as if on their ordinary business without taking the least notice of the ship, he saw also many houses and Canoes hauld up under the trees. To this I only say that I did not see them or know that any one else had till the ship had passd the place 1/2 an hour.

6. Pleasant breeze, at 1/2 past 11 land in sight again, at 3 came up with it, proved to be two distinct Islands with many small ones near them Joining by reefs under water.

The Islands themselves were long thin strips of land ranging in all directions sometime ten or more miles in
6. length but never more than a quarter of a mile broad; upon them were many Cocoa nut and other trees and many inhabitants several of whom came out in Canoes as far as the reefs but would not come without them; 6 particularly who for some time walkd along shore abreast of the ship, on our passing the end of the Island launchd two Canoes with great quickness and dexterity and 3 getting into each the[y] put off as we thought intending to come to us. The ship was brought to and we waited some time but they like their fellows came no farther than the reef, where they stoppd and waited for two messengers who we saw dispatchd from the great canoes wading and swimming towards them along the reef, they met and after a council I suppose resolvd not to come off. The ship after waiting some time stood off and when 2 or 3 miles from the shore was followd by a canoe with a sail, but not thinking it worth while to bring too for her she soon gave over the chase and returnd to the reef.

The people seemd as well as we could judge (who were a good 1/2 mile from the shore) to be
6. about our size and well made, of a dark brown complexion, stark naked, wearing their hair tied back with a fillet which pass'd round their head and kept it sticking out behind like a bush. The greatest number of them carried in their hands two weapons, one a slender pole from 10 to 14 feet in length at one end of which was a small knob or point not unlike the point of a spear, the other not above 4 feet long made much like a paddle as possibly it was intended, for their canoes were very different in size. The two which we saw them launch seem'd not intended to carry more than barely the 3 men who got into each of them, others there were which had 6 and some 7 men; one of these hoisted a sail which did not seem to reach above 6 feet high above the boat, this (as soon as they came to the reef and stoppd their boat) they took down and converted into a shed to shelter them from a small shower of rain which then fell. The Canoe which follow'd us to sea hoisted a sail not unlike an English lugsail and near as lofty as an English boat of the same
The people on the shore made many signals but whether they meant to frighten us away or invite us ashore is difficult to tell: they waved with their hands and seemed to beckon us to them but they were assembled together with clubs and staves as they would have done had they meant to oppose us. Their signs we answered by waving our hats and shouting which they answered by shouting again. Our situation made it very improper to try them farther, we wanted nothing, the Island was too trifling to be an object worth taking possession of; had we therefore out of mere curiosity hoisted out a boat and the natives by attacking us oblige us to destroy some of them the only reason we could give for it would be the desire of satisfying a useless curiosity. We shall soon by our connections with the inhabitants of Georges Island (who already know our strength and if they do not love at least fear us) gain some knowledge of the customs of these savages; or possibly persuade one of them to come with us who may serve as an interpreter and give us an opportunity
6. hereafter of landing where ever we please without running the risk of being obligd to commit the cruelties which the Spaniards and most others who have been in these seas have often brought themselves under the dreadfull nescessity of being guilty of, for guilty I must call it.

7. This morn at day break Land in sight again, by 8 O’Clock came up with an Island made up like the last of narrow slips of land and reefs of rocks, the greatest part of the land lookd green and pleasant but it was without cocoa nut trees or any sign of inhabitants.

I purposely omit to mention the size of these Islands as it is almost impossible to guess at, and very dificult to give an idea of the contents of narrow strips of land which run one within another as a ribband thrown carelessly down would do. If you measure the lengh of it, it 4 or 5 times exceeds the space of sea that it occupies, if the circumference, such land of 100 Leagues in circumference would scarce contain 100 square miles; if the Space of sea that they occupy you err as much, for of that 20, 40 nay sometimes 100 parts are sea for
7. one of land, tho that sea is so shut in by banks and reefs that no ship can get into it.

8. Pleasant breeze but we have as yet found the trade hardly so strong as it was in the Atlantick. At 2 O’Clock Land was seen from the masthead, the ship stands for it and about sunset came abreast of it distant 2 leagues. It prove’d an Island larger than any we had seen as it extended 6 or 7 leagues, it was every where coverd with plenty of large trees probably Cocoa nuts and it is also inhabited as we judge from a smoak rising from among the trees; in everything it appeard exactly of the same nature with the rest which we have seen. We could plainly distinguish it in some places broken off into reefs behind which we saw distant land and thence judg’d that there was a lagoon within it; the land however appeard to be broader than any we had seen before.

9. Fine weather and pleasant breeze. It is now almost night and time for me to wind up the clue of my this days lucubrations, so as we have found no Island I shall employ the time and paper which I had allotted to describe one in a work which I am sure will be more usefull at,
9. if not more entertaining to all future navigators, by describing the method which we took to cure Cabbage in England; which Cabbage we have eat every day since we left Cape Horne and have now good store of, remaining as good at least to our palates and full as green and pleasing to the eye as if it was bought fresh every morning at Covent Garden market. Our Steward has given me the receipt which I shall copy exactly false spelling exceptd.

Take a strong Iron bound cask for no weak or wooden bound one should ever be trusted in a long voyage, take out the head and when the whole is well cleand cover the bottom with salt. Then take the Cabbage and stripping off the outside leaves take the rest leaf by leaf till you come to the heart which cut into four; these leaves and heart lay upon the Salt about 2 or 3 inches thick and sprinkle Salt pretty thick over them and lay cabbage upon the salt stratum super thick till the cask is full. Then lay on the head of the cask with a weight which in 5 or 6 days will have pressd the cabbage into a much smaller
9. compass. After this fill up the cask with more cabbage as before directed and Head it up. N.B. the Cabbage should be gatherd in dry weather some time after sun rise that the dew may not be upon it. Halves of cabbages are better for keeping than single leaves.

10. Last night a halo was observ’d round the moon which was followd by a very disagreable night, the wind being all round the compass and sometimes blowing very fresh with severe thunder and lightning and very heavy rain.

This morning the wind from N to NW, the weather very hazey and thick. About 9 it cleard up a little and showd us Osnabrug Island discoverd by the Dolphin in her last voyage, it was distant about 6 leagues and appeard like a very short cone. Very light winds NW. About one land was seen ahead in the direction of Georges Land, it was however so faint that very few could see it. Soon after it was seen off the deck in the same faint manner but appearing high. Our distance when it was first seen was 25 leagues. At sun set the ship was nearly abreast Osnabrug Island 2 or 3 leagues from it, it appeard to have many trees upon it but in some parts the rocks were quite bare.

At this time it remaind in dispute
10. whether what had been so long seen to the Westward was realy land or only vapours; myself went to the Masthead but the sunset was cloudy and we could see nothing of it.

As soon as I came down a shark att the stern attackd the net in which tomorrows dinner was towing to freshen, we hookd and took him just as it became dark.

11. Up at 5 this morn to examine the shark who proves to be A blew Shark *Squalus glaucus*, while we were doing it 3 more came under the Stern of which we soon caught 2 which were common grey Sharks *Squalus Carcharias*, on one of whom were some sucking fish *Echinus remora*. The seamen tell us that the blew shark is worst of all sharks to eat, indeed his smell is abominably strong so as we had two of the better sort he was hove overboard.

Little wind and variable with Squalls from all points of the Compass bringing heavy rain. Georges Island in sight appearing very high in the same direction as the land was seen last night, so I found the fault was in our eyes yesterday tho the non-seers were much
11. more numerous in the ship than the seers.

Today and yesterday many birds were about the ship among which a bird which I took to be the common tropick bird *Phaeton aethereus* was one, he was about the size of our tropick bird but differd from him in having black barrs upon his back and the long feathers in his tail white, so much I say but the weather was so uncertain that I could not go out to shoot one.

Calm this even, at sunset Georges Land appeard plain tho we had not neard it much: since the clouds went from the tops of the hills it appeard less high than it did tho it certainly is very high.

As I am now on the brink of going ashore after a long passage thank god in as good health as man can be I shall fill a little paper in describing the means which I have taken to prevent the scurvy in particular.

The ship was supplyd by the Admiralty with Sower crout which I eat of constantly till our salted Cabbage was opend which I preferd as a pleasant substitute. Wort was servd out almost constantly, of this I drank from
11. a pint or more every evening but all this did not so intirely check the distemper as to prevent my feeling some small effects of it. About a fortnight ago my gums swelld and some small pimples rose in the inside of my mouth which threatned to become ulcers, I then flew to the lemon Juice which had been put up for me according to Dr Hulmes method describd in his book and in his letter which is inserted here: every kind of liquor which I usd was made sour with the Lemon juice No 3 so that I took near 6 ounces a day of it. The effect of this was surprizing, in less than a week my gums became as firm as ever and at this time I am troubled with nothing but a few pimples on my face which have not deterrd me from leaving off the juice intirely.

12. Very nearly calm all last night, Georges Land was now but little nearer to us than last night, the tops of the hills were wrap’d in clouds. About 7 a small breze sprung up and we saw some Canoes coming off to us, by ten or eleven

Daily Log continues on Log page 215
Sir,

The vessels containing the orange and lemon juice which were sent you by order of Dr. Fothergill were to be marked, that you might know their contents. But least, in the hurry of sending them, that circumstance should have been neglected, I will take the liberty to explain them. No 1. The Case contains six gallons of Lemon-juice evaporated down to less than two gallons. No 2 The large Cask contains seven gallons of Orange-juice and one gallon of Brandy. No 3 The small Cask contains five Quarts of Lemon-juice and one of Brandy. - When you come to make use of the juice which is in the Casks, do not open the bunghole but draw it off at the end of the Cask, by means of a wooden-cock, and make a vent-hole at the top of the Cask, with a peg in it, and always observe this method when you draw off your Juice which you keep in Casks. You may find the proper directions for the preservation of the juice in Casks, in the Proposal for preventing the Scurvy, p. 67, 82, 83. It would not be amiss, then, if you were to take out with you several wooden Cocks, least any should be lost or broken: and perhaps 2 or 3 strong iron-bound Casks, holding ten Gallons a piece
might be very useful for taking-in a quantity of orange, lemon or lime Juice, when you touch at any place abroad where those Fruits grow; for the directions on this head see the Proposal p. 82. - Besides the Juices, I would recommend to you to carry out a quantity of Molosses, and two or three pounds of the best Chio and Strasburgh Turpentine, in order to brew Beer with, for your daily drink, when your Water becomes bad. The rules for brewing this kind of Beer you will find in the Appendix to the Proposal. In this case you will want Yeast, and the manner of preserving this at sea you may also meet with in the Appendix p. 103. So small a quantity of Molosses as two Gallons, or two Gallons and an half are said to be sufficient for making an hogshead of tolerably good Beer. And this method of brewing Beer at sea, will be peculiarly useful in case you should have stinking water on board; for I find by Experience that the smell of stinking water will be entirely destroyed by the process of fermentation. I sincerely wish you and your companions a most prosperous Voyage, and a safe return to old England, loaded with all the honours you so justly deserve; and am,

Sir,
Your most humble servant,
N. Hulme

Hatton-Garden,
Augs 1st 1768.
Wilkinson: June 1849

Zena, Harriet Zg
12. they were up with us. I forbear to say any thing about either people or canoes as I shall have so many better opportunities of observing them: we however bought their cargoes consisting of fruits and cocoa nuts which were very acceptable to us after our long passage.

13. This morn early came to an anchor in Port Royal bay on King George the thirds Island. Before the anchor was down we were surrounded by a large number of Canoes who traded very quietly and civilly, for beads chiefly, in exchange for which they gave Cocoa nuts Bread fruit both roasted and raw some small fish and apples. They had one pig with them which they refus’d to sell for nails upon any account but repeatedly offerd it for a hatchet; of these we had very few on board so thought it better to let the pig go away than to give one of them in exchange, knowing from the authority of those who had been here before that if we once did it they would never lower their price.
13. As soon as the anchors were well down the boats were hoisted out and we all went ashore where we were met by some hundreds of the inhabitants whose faces at least gave evident signs that we were not unwelcome guests, tho they at first hardly dare aproach us, after a little time they became very familiar. The first who aproachd us came creeping almost on his hands and knees and gave us a green bough the token of peace, this we receivd and immediately each gatherd a green bough and carried in our hands. They march’d with us about 1/2 a mile then made a general stop and scraping the ground clean from the plants that grew upon it every one of the principals threw his bough down upon the bare place and made signs that we should do the same: the marines were drawn up and marching in order dropd each a bough upon those that the Indians had laid down, we all folowd their example and thus peace was concluded. We then walkd into the woods followd by the whole train to whoom we gave beads and small presents. In this manner we walkd for 4 or 5 miles
13. under groves of Cocoa nut and bread fruit trees loaded with a profusion of fruit and giving the most gratefull shade I have ever experienced, under these were the habitations of the people most of them without walls: in short the scene we saw was the truest picture of an arcadia of which we were going to be kings that the imagination can form.

Our pleasure in seeing this was however not a little allayd by finding in all our walk only 2 hogs and not one fowl. The Dolphins people who were with us told us that the people who we saw were only of the common sort and that the bettermost had certainly removd, as a proof of this they took us to the place where the Queens palace formerly stood of which there was no traces left. We howev[e]r resolved not to be discouraged at this but to proceed tomorrow morning in search of the place to which these superior people had retreated, in hopes to make the same peace with them as we have done with our freinds the blackguards.

14. This morn several Canoas came on board among which were two in which were people who by their dress and appearance seemd to be of a rank superior
14. to those who we had seen yesterday. These we invited to come on board and on coming into the Cabbin each singled out his freind, one took the Captn and the other me, they took off a large part of their cloaths and each dress’d his freind with them he took off: in return for this we presented them with each a hatchet and some beads. They made many signs to us desiring us to go to the places where they livd to the SW of where we lay; the boats were hoisted out and we took them with us and immediately proceeded according to their directions.

After rowing about a league they beckon’d us in shore and shewd us a long house where they gave us to understand that they livd; here we landed and were met by some hundreds of inhabitants who conducted us into the long house. Matts were spread and we were desired to set down fronting an old man who we had not before seen, he immediately orderd a cock and hen to be brought which were presented to Captn Cook and me, we accepted of the present. Then a peice of Cloth was presented to each
of us perfumd after their manner not disagreeably which they took great pains to make us understand. My peice of Cloth was 11 yards long and 2 wide: for this I made return by presenting him with a large lacd silk neckcloth I had on and a linnen pocket handkercheif, these he immediately put on him and seemd to be much pleasd with.

After this ceremony was over we walkd freely about several large houses attended by the ladies who shewd us all kind of civilities our situation could admit of, but as there were no places of retirement, the houses being intirely without walls, we had not an opportunity of putting their politeness to every test that maybe some of us would not have faild to have done had circumstances been more favourable; indeed we had no reason to doubt any part of their politeness, as by their frequently pointing to the matts on the ground and sometimes by force seating themselves and us upon them they plainly shewd that they were much less jealous of observation than we were.

We now took our leave of our freindly cheif and proceeded along shore for about a mile when we were met by a throng of people at the
14. head of whom appeared another chief. We had learned the ceremony we were to go through which was to receive the green bough which was always brought to us at every fresh meeting and to ratify the peace of which that was the emblem by laying our hands on our breasts and saying Taio, which I imagine signifies friend. The bough was here offered and accepted and in return every one of us said Taio. The chief then made us signs that if we chose to eat he had victuals ready: we accepted the offer and dined heartily on fish and bread fruit with plantains &c dressed after their way, raw fish was offered to us which it seems they themselves eat. The adventures of this entertainment I much wish to record particularly, but am so much hurried by attending the Indians ashore almost all day long that I fear I shall scarce understand my own language when I read it again.

Our chief's own wife (ugly enough in conscience) did me the honour with very little invitation to squat down on the mats close by me: no sooner had she done so than I espied among the common crowd a very pretty girl with a fire in her eyes that I had not before seen in the country. Unconscious of the dignity of my companion I beckoned to the
other who after some intreatys came and sat on the other side of me: I was then desirous of getting rid of my former companion so I cease’d to attend to her and loaded my pretty girl with beads and every present I could think pleasing to her: the other shewd much disgust but did not quit her place and continued to supply me with fish and cocoa nut milk. How this would have ended is hard to say, it was interrupted by an accident which gave us an opportunity of seeing much of the peoples manners. Dr Solander and another gentleman who had not been in as good company as myself found that their pockets had been pickd, one had lost a snuff box the other an opera glass. Complaint was made to the cheif, and to give it weight I started up from the ground and striking the butt of my gun made a rattling noise which I had before used in our walk to frighten the people and keep them at a distance. Upon this as a signal every one of the common sort (among whom was my pretty girl) ran like sheep from the house leaving us with only the cheif his 3 wives and two or three better dressd than the rest whose quality I do not yet guess at. The cheif then took me by the hand to the other end of the house where lay a large quantity of their cloth, this he offerd to me peice by peice making signs that if it would make me amends I might take any part or all. I
14. put it back and by signs told him that I wanted nothing but our own which his people had stole. On this he gave me into charge of my faithfull companion his wife who had never budged an inch from my elbow; with her I sat down on the mat and convers’d by signs for near 1/2 an hour after which time he came back bringing the snuff box and the case of the opera glass, which with vast pleasure in his countenance he returnnd to the owners, but his face soon changed when he was shewn that the case was empty which ought to have been full. He then took me by the hand and walkd along shore with great rapidity about a mile. By the way he receivd a peice of cloth from a woman which he carried in his hand. At last we came to a house in which we were receivd by a woman; to her he gave the cloth he had and told us to give her some beads. The cloth and beads were left on the floor by us and she went out, she stayd about 1/4 of an hour and then returnnd bringing the glass in her hand with a vast expression of joy on her countenance, for few faces have I seen which have more expression in them than those of these people. The beads were now returnnd with a positive resolution of not accepting them and the Cloth was as resolutely forcd upon Dr Solander as a recompence for his loss. He then made a new present of beads to the
14. lady and our ceremonies ended we returnd to the ship admiring a policy at least equal to any we had seen in civilizd countries, excercisd by people who have never had any advantage but meer natural instinct uninstructed by the example of any civilizd countrey.

15. This morn we landed at the watering place bringing with us a small tent which we set up. In doing this we were attended by some hundreds of the natives who shewd a deference and respect to us which much amazd me. I myself drew a line before them with the butt end of my musquet and made signs to them to set down without it, they obeyd instantly and not a man attempted to set a foot within it, above two hours were spent so and not the least disorder being committed. We propos’d to walk into the woods and see if today we might not find more hoggs &c. than when we last visited them supposing it probable that a part of them at least had been drove away on our arrival: this in particular tempted us to go away, with many other circumstances, as our old man (an Indian well known to the Dolphins) attempted by many signs to hinder us from going into the woods. The tent was left in charge of a Midshipman with the marines 13 in number.
15. We marchd away and were absent above 2 hours. A little while before we came back we heard several musquet shots. Our old man immediately calld us together and by waving his hand sent away every Indian who followd us except 3 every one of whom took in their hands a green bough: on this we suspected that some mischeif had happned at the tent and hastend home with all expedition. On our return we found that an Indian had snatchd a sentrys musquet from him unawares and run off; the midshipman (may be) imprudently orderd the marines to fire. they did fire into the thickest of the flying croud some hundreds in number several shot, and pursuing the man who stole the musquet killd him dead but whether any others were killd or hurt no one could tell. No Indian was now to be seen about the tent but our old man, who with us took all pains to reconcile them again; before night by his means we got together a few of them and explaining to them that the man who sufferd was guilty of a crime deserving of death (for so we were forcd to make it) we retird to the ship not well pleasd with the days expedition, guilty no doubt in some measure
15. of the death of a man who the most severe laws of equity would not have condemnd to so severe a punishment.

16. No canoes about the ship this morning, indeed we could not expect any as it is probable that the news of our behaviour yesterday was now known every where, a circumstance which will doubtless not increase the confidence of our freinds the Indians. We were rather surprizd that the Dolphins old man who seemd yesterday so desirous of making peace was not come on board today; some few people were upon the beach but very few in proportion to what we saw yesterday. At noon went ashore the people rather shy of us as we must expect them to be till by good usage we can gain anew their confidence.

Poor Mr Buchan the young man who I brought out as lanscape and figure painter was yesterday attackd by an epileptick fit, he was today quite insensible, our surgeon gives me very little hopes of him.

17. At two this morn Mr Buchan died, about nine every thing was ready for his interment he being already so much changd that it would not be practicable to keep him even till night. Dr Solander Mr Sporing Mr Parkinson and some of the officers of the ship attended his funeral. I sincerely regret him as an ingenious and good young man,
17. but his Loss to me is irretrevable, my airy dreams of entertaining my freinds in England with the scenes that I am to see here are vanishd. No account of the figures and dresses of men can be satisfactory unless illustrated with figures: had providence spard him a month longer what an advantage would it have been to my undertaking but I must submit.

Our two freinds the cheifs of the west came this morn to see us. One I shall for the future call Lycurgus from the justice he executed on his offending subjects on the 14th, the other from the large size of his body I shall call Hercules. Each of these brought a hog and bread fruit ready dressd as a present for which they were presented in return with a hatchet and a nail each. Hercules’s present is the largest he seems indeed to be the richest man.

In the afternoon we all went ashore to measure out the ground for the tents, which done Cap Cooke and Mr Green slept ashore in a tent erected for that purpose after having observd an eclipse of one of the satellites of Jupiter.

18. This morn at day break all hands were ashore and employd in getting up the tents and making a defence round them. The ground we have pitchd upon is very sandy which makes it nescessary to support
18. it with wood, for the doing of this our people cut the boughs of trees and the Indians very readily assisted them in bringing them down to the place. Three sides of our fort are to be thus guarded the other is bounded by a river on the banks of which water cask[s] are to be placed.

The Indians brought down so much provision of Cocoa nuts and bread fruit today that before night we were obligd to leave off buying and acquaint them by signs that we should not want any more for 2 days; every thing was bought for beads, a bead about as large as a pea purchasing 4 or 6 breadfruits and a like number of Cocoa nutts.

My tents were got up before night and I sept ashore in them for the first time. The lines were guarded round by many Sentries but no Indian atempted to come near them during the whole night.

19. This morn Lycurgus and his wife come to see us and bring with them all their household furniture and even houses to be erected in our neighbourhood, a circumstance which gave me great pleasure as I had spard no pains to gain the freindship of this man who seemd more sensible than any of his fellow cheifs we have seen. His behavior in this Instance makes us not doubt of having gaind
19. his confidence at least.

Soon after his arrival he took me by the hand and led me out of the lines, signing that I should accompany him into the woods, this I made no difficulty of doing as I was desirous of knowing how near us he really intended to settle. I followed him about a quarter of a mile when we arrived at a small house or rather the awning of a canoe set upon the shore, which seemed to be his occasional habitation; here he unfolded a bundle of their clothes and clothed me in two garments, one red cloth the other very pretty matting, after this we returned to the tents. He eat pork and bread fruit which was brought him in a basket using salt water instead of sauce, and then retired into my bedchamber and slept about half an hour.

About dinner time Lycurgus’s wife brought a handsome young man about 22 to the tents whom they both seemed to acknowledge as their son. At night he and another chief who had also visited us went away to the westward, but Lycurgus and his wife went towards the place I was at in the morning which makes us not doubt of their staying with us for the future.

Mr Monkhouse our surgeon walked this evening into the woods and brought back an
19. account of having seen the body of the man who was shot on the 15th. It was placed on a kind of Bier supported by stakes and covered by a small hut which seemed to have been built for the purpose; the body was wrapped up in cloth and near it were placed war instruments a hatchet some hair a cocoa nut and a cup of water. Farther he did not examine on account of the stench of the body which was intolerable. They also [saw] two more huts of the same kind in one of which they saw the bones of the person who had lain there quite dry. A custom so new as this appears to be surprized us all very much, but whether all who die are thus disposed of or it is a peculiar honour shewn to those who dye in war is to be cleared up by future observation.

20. Raind hard all this day at intervals, so much so that we could not stir at all, the people however went on briskly with the fortification in spite of weather. Lycurgus dind with us, he imitates our manners in every instance already holding a knife and fork more handily than a Frenchman could learn to do in years. Notwithstanding the rain some provisions are brought to the market which is kept just without the lines; indeed ever since we have been here we have had more breadfruit every day than both the people and hogs can eat, but in the pork way we have been so poorly supplyd that I believe fresh pork has not been served to the ships company above once.
21. Several of our freinds at the tents this morn, one whom from his grim countenance we have callld Ajax and at one time thought to be a great king. He had on his canoe a hog but he chose rather to sell it at the market than give it to us as a present; which we account for by his having in the morning receivd a shirt in return for a peice of cloth, which made him fear that had he given the hog it might have been taken into the bargain - a conduct very different from that of our freind Lycurgus who seems in every instance to place a most unbounded confidence in us.

22. Pleasant weather, our freinds as usual come early to visit us, Hercules with two piggs and a Dolphins ax which he wishd to have repaird as it acordingly was. Lycurgus brought 2 large fish an acceptable present as that article has always been scarce with us. Trade brisk today; since our new manufacture of hatchets has been set on foot we get some hogs tho our tools are so small and bad that I only wonder how they can stand one stroke.

The flies have been so troublesome ever since we have been ashore that we can scarce get any business done for them; they eat the painters colours off the paper as fast as they can be laid on, and if a fish is to be drawn there is more trouble in keeping them off it than in the drawing itself.

Many expedients have been thought of, none succeed better than a mosquito net which covers table chair painter and drawings, but even that is not sufficent, a fly trap was nessessary to set within this to
22. atract the vermin from eating the colours. For that purpose yesterday tarr and molasses was mixt together but did not succeed. The plate smeard with it was left on the outside of the tent to clean: one of the Indians observing this took an opportunity when he thought that no one observd him to take some of this mixture up into his hand, I saw and was curious to know for what use it was intended, the gentleman had a large sore upon his backside to which this clammy liniament was applyd but with what success I never took the pains to enquire.

Hercules gave us today a specimen of the musick of this countrey: 4 people performd upon flutes which they sounded with one nostril while they stopd the other with their thumbs, to these 4 more sang keeping very good time but during 1/2 an hour which we stayd with them they playd only one tune consisting of not more than 5 or 6 notes. More I am inclind to think they have not upon their instruments which have only two stops.

23. Mr Green and myself went today a little way upon the hills in order to see how the roads were. Lycurgus went with us but complaind much in the ascent saying that it would kill him. We found as far as we went, possibly 3 miles, exceeding good paths and at the farthest part of our walk boys bringing wood from the mountans, which we look upon to be a sure proof that journey will be easy whenever we atempt to go higher.

In our return I visited the Tomb or Bier in which was deposited the body of the man who was shot. I lifted up the cloth and saw part of the body already dropping to peices with putrefaction about him and
23. indeed within all parts of his flesh were abundance of
maggots of a species of Beetle very comon here.

Such an advance of putrefaction in 8 days for it was
no more since he was shot is almost past credit but
what will not a hot climate and plenty of insects do.

We had this evening some conversation about an ax
which was brought in the morning by Hercules, it
wanting grinding. Its make was very different from
that of our English ones, several gentlemen were of
opinion that it was a French one, some went so far as
to give it as their opinion that some other ship had
been here since the Dolphin. The difficulty however
appeard to me at least easily solvd by supposing axes
to have been taken in the Dolphin as trade, in which
case old ones might have been bought of the make of
any countrey, for many such I suppose there are in
every old iron shop in London.

24. Dr Solander and myself went along shore to the
eastward in hopes of finding something worth
observation by inlarging our ground. For about 2
miles the countrey within us was flat and fertile, the
hills then came very near the waters edge and soon
after quite into the sea so that we were obligd to climb
over them. This barren countrey continued for about 3
miles more when we came to a large flat full of good
houses and wealthy looking people; here was a river
much more considerable than our own, it came out of
a very deep and beautifull valley and was where we
crossd it near 100 yards wide tho not quite at the sea.
24. About a mile farther than this river we went when the Land became again as barren as possible, the rocks every where projecting into the sea, so we resolvd to return. Soon after this resolution one of the natives made us an offer of refreshment which we accepted. He was remarkable for being much the whitest man we had seen. On examining him more nearly his skin was dead pale without the least signs of Complexion in any part of it, some parts were lighter than others but the darkest was lighter than any of our skins, his hair and eyebrows and beard were as white as his skin, his eyes bloodshot, he apeard to be very short sighted, his whole body was scurfy and maybe disease had been the cause of his colour; if not we shall see more such. In our return met Lycurgus who seem’d much rejoicd at seeing us as did all his women, to shew their regard I suppose they all cry’d most heartily.

25. I do not know by what accident I have so long omitted to mention how much these people are given to theiving. I will make up for my neglect however today by saying that great and small cheifs and common men all are firmly of opinion that if they can once get possession of any thing it immediately becomes their own. This we were convinced of the very second day we were here, the cheifs were employd in stealing what they could in the Cabbin while their dependants took every thing that was loose about the ship, even the glass ports not escaping them of which they got off with 2. Lycurgus and Hercules were the only two who had not yet been found guilty, but they stood in our opinion but upon tickilish ground as we could not well suppose them intirely free from a vice their countrey men were
25. so much given up to.

Last night Dr Solander lent his knife to one of Lycurgus’s women who forgot to return it, this morn mine was missing. I could give no account of it so resolvd to go to Lycurgus and ask him whether or not he had stole it trusting that if he had he would return it. I went and taxd him with it. He denyd knowing any thing concerning it, I told him I was resolvd to have it returnd. On this a man present produc’d a rag in which was tied up 3 knives, one was Dr Solanders the other a table knife the other no one laid claim to. With these he marchd to the tents to make restitution while I remaind with the women who much feard that he would be hurt; when come there he restord the two knives to their proper owners and began immediately to search for mine in all the places where he had ever seen it lay. One of my servants seeing what he was about brought it to him, he had it seems laid it by the day before and did not know of my missing it. Lycurgus then burst into tears making signs with my knife that if he was ever guilty of such an action he would submit to have his throat cut. He returnd immediately to me with a countenance sufficiently upbraiding me for my suspicions; the scene was immediately changd, I became the guilty and he the innocent person, his looks affected me much. A few presents and staying a little with him reconcild him intirely; his behavior has however given me an opinion of him much superior to any of his countreymen.

26. Plenty of trade this morn indeed we have always had enough of bread fruit and cocoa nuts, refreshments maybe more nescessary for the people than pork tho they certainly do not like them so well.
26. Our freinds as usual at the tents today but do nothing worthy record.

27. The day passd as usual. Lycurgus and a freind of his (who eats most monstrously) dind with us, we christend him Epicurus. At night they took their leave and departed but Lycurgus soon returnd with fire in his eyes, seizd my arm and signd to me to follow him. I did and he soon brought me to a place where was our butcher, who he told me by signs had either threatned or atempted to cut his wives throat with a reaphook he had in his hand. I signd to him that the man should be punishd tomorrow if he would only clearly explain the offence, for he was so angry that his signs were almost unintelligible. He grew cooler and shewd me that the Butcher had taken a fancy to a stone hatchet which lay in his house, this he offerd to purchase for a nail: His wife who was their refus’d to part with it upon which he took it and throwing down the nail threaten’d to cut her throat if she atempted to hinder him; in evidence of this the hatchet and nail were produc’d and the butcher had so little to say in his defence that no one doubted of his guilt. After this we parted and he appeard satisfied but did not forget to put me in mind of my promise that the butcher should tomorrow be punished.

This day we found that our freinds had names and they were not a little pleasd to discover that we had them likewise; for the future Lycurgus will be calld Tūbourai tamaide and his wife Tomío and the three women who commonly come with him Terapo, Terarü and Omíe. As for our names they make so poor a hand of pronouncing them that I fear we shall be obligd to take each of us a new one for the occasion.
28. Many of our friends were with us very early even before day, some strangers with them. Terapo was observ’d to be among the women on the outside of the gate, I went out to her and brought her in, tears stood in her eyes which the moment she enter’d the tent began to flow plentifully. I began to enquire the cause; she instead of answering me took from under her garment a sharks tooth and struck it into her head with great force 6 or 7 times. A profusion of Blood follow’d these strokes and alarm’d me not a little; for two or 3 minutes she bled freely more than a pint in quantity, during that time she talk’d loud in a most melancholy tone. I was not a little mov’d at so singular a spectacle and holding her in my arms did not cease to enquire what might be the cause of so strange an action, she took no notice of me till the bleeding ceas’d nor did any Indian in the tent take any of her, all talk’d and laugh’d as if nothing melancholy was going forward; but what surpriz’d me most of all was that as soon as the bleeding ceas’d she look’d up smiling and immediately began to collect pieces of cloth which during her bleeding she had thrown down to catch the blood. These she carried away out of the tents and threw into the sea, carefully dispersing them abroad as if desirous that no one should be reminded of her action by the sight of them; she then went into the river and after washing her whole body return’d to the tents as lively and chearfull as any one in them.

After breakfast Mr Molineux came ashore and the moment he enter’d the tent fixing his eyes upon a woman who was setting there declar’d her to be the Dolphins Queen, she also instantly acknowledg’d him to be a person who she had before seen. Our attention was now intirely diverted from every other object to the examination of a personage we had heard so much spoken of in Europe: she appeard to be about 40, tall and very lusty, her skin white and her eyes full of meaning, she might have been hansome when young but now few or no traces of it were left.
28. As soon as her majesties quality was known to us she was invited to go on board the ship, where no presents were spard that were thought to be agreable to her in consideration of the service she had been of to the Dolphin. Among other things a childs dol was given to her of which she seemd very fond. On her landing she met Hercules who for the future I shall call by his real name Tootahah. She shewd him her presents: he became uneasy nor was he satisfied till he had also got a doll given to him, which now he seemd to preferr to a hatchet that he had in return for presents, tho after this time the dolls were of no kind of value.

The men who visited us constantly eat with us of our provisions, but the women never had been prevaild on to taste a morsel; today however they retird sometime after dinner into the servants apartment and eat there a large quantity of plantains, tho they could not be persuaded to eat with us, a mystery we find it very dificult to account for.

29. My first business this morning was to see the promise I had made to Tubourai and Tomio of the butchers being punishd performd, a promise they had not faild to remind me of yesterday when the croud of people who were with us hinderd it from being performd. In consequence of this I took them on board of the ship where Capt Cooke immediately orderd the offender to be punishd; they stood quietly and saw him stripd and fastned to the rigging but as soon as the first blow was given interfered with many tears, begging the punishment might cease a request which the Captn would not comply with.

On my return ashore I proceeded to pay a visit to her majesty Oborea [as] I shall for the future call her. She I was told was still asleep in her Canoe-awning, where I went intending to call up her majesty but was surprizd to find her in bed with a hansome lusty young man of about 25 whose name was Obadée. I however soon understood that he was her gallant a circumstance which she made not the least secret of. Upon my arrival Her majesty proceeded to put on her breeches which done she clothd me in fine cloth and proceeded with me to the tents.
29. At night I visited Tubourai as I often did by candle light and found him and all his family in a most melancholy mood: most of them shed tears so that I soon left them without being at all able to find out the cause of their grief. Ouwhá the Dolphins old man and another who we did not know had prophesied to some of our people that in 4 days we should fire our guns: this was the 4th night and the circumstance of Tubourai crying over me as it was interpreted alarmed our officers a good deal. The sentrys are therefore doubled and we sleep tonight under arms.

30. A very strict watch was kept last night as intended, at 2 in the morn myself went round the point, found every thing so quiet that I had no kind of doubts.

Our little fortification is now compleat, it consists of high breastworks at each end, the front palisades and the rear guarded by the river on the bank of which are placed full Water cask[s], at every angle is mounted a swivel and two carriage guns pointed the two ways by which the Indians might attack us out of the woods. Our sentrys are also as well relevd as they could be in the most regular fortification.

About 10 Tomio came running to the tents, she seizd my hand and told me that Tubourai was dying and I must go instantly with her to his house. I went and found him leaning his head against a post. He had vomited they said and he told me he should certainly dye in consequence of something our people had given him to eat, the remains of which were shewn me carefully wrapd up in a leaf. This upon examination I found to be a Chew of tobacco which he had begg’d of some of our people, and trying to imitate them in keeping it in his mouth as he saw them do had chewd it almost to powder swallowing his spittle. I was now master of his disease for which I prescribd cocoa nut milk which soon restor’d him to health.
1. This morn in walking round the point I saw a canoe which I suppose to have come from a distance by her having a quantity of fresh water in her in Bamboes; in every other respect she is quite like those we have seen, her people however are absolute strangers to us. Before noon our freinds visit us as usual and the day passed without any events.

2. About 10 this morn the astronomical quadrant which had been brought ashore yesterday was miss’d, a circumstance which alarmd us all very much. It had been laid in Captn Cook’s birth where no one slept, the telescopes were in my tent safe. Every place was searchd aboard and ashore but no such thing to be found. It appeard very improbable that the Indians could have carried so large a thing out of the tents without being observd by the sentries, our people might have stole [it] as it was packd up in a deal case and might by them be suppos’d to contain nails or some kind of traffick; a large reward was therefore offerd to any one who could find it and all hands sent out to search round the fort, upon a supposition that the Indians would immediately quit a prize that could be of so little use to them. In about an hour all returnd, no news of the Quadrant. I now went into the woods to get intelligence no longer doubting but that it was in the hands of the Indians. Tubourai met me crossing the river and immediately made with 3 straws in his hand the figure of a triangle: the Indians had opend the cases. No time was now to be lost; I made signs to him that he must instantly go with me to the place where it was, he agreed and out we set accompanied by a midshipman and Mr Green, we went to the Eastward. At every house we went past Tubourai enquird after the theif by name, the people readily told him which way he had gone and how long ago it was since he pass’d by, a circumstance which gave great hopes of coming up with him. The weather was excessive hot, the Thermometer before we left the tents up at 91 made our
journey very tiresome. Sometimes we walk’d sometimes we ran when we imagin’d (which we sometimes did) that the chase was just before us till we arriv’d at the top of a hill about 4 miles from the tents: from this place Tubourai shew’d us a point about 3 miles off and made us understand that we were not to expect the instrument till we got there. We now consider’d our situation, no arms among us but a pair of pocket pistols which I always carried, going at least 7 miles from our fort where the Indians might not be quite so submissive as at home, going also to take from them a prize for which they had venturd their lives. All this consider’d we thought it proper that while Mr Green and myself proceeded the midshipman should return and desire captn Cooke to send a party of men after us, telling him at the same time that it was impossible we could return till dark night. This done we proceeded and in the very spot Tubourai had mention’d were met by one of his own people bringing part of the Quadrant in his hand. We now stop’d and many Indians gather’d about us rather rudely, the sight of one of my pistols however instantly check’d them and they behav’d with all the order imaginable, tho we quickly had some hundreds surrounding a ring we had mark’d out on the grass. The box was now brought to us and some of the small matters such as reading glasses &c. which in their hurry they had put into a pistol case, this I knew belong’d to me, it had been stole out of the tents with a horse pistol in it which I immediately demanded and had immediately restورد. Mr Green began to overlook the Instrument to see if any part or parts were wanting, several small things were, and people were sent out in search of them some of which return’d and others did not; the stand was not there but that we were inform’d had been left behind by the theif and we should have it on our return,
2. and answer which coming from Tubourai satisfied us very well; nothing else was wanting but what could easily be repairid so we pack’d all up in grass as well as we could and proceeded homewards. After walking about 2 miles we met Captn Cooke with a party of marines coming after us, all were you may imagine not a little pleasd at the event of our excursion.

The Captn on leaving the Tents left orders both for the ship and shore, which were that no canoes should be suffer’d to go out of the bay but that nobodys person should be seizd or detaind, as we rightly guessd that none of our freinds had any hand in the theft. These orders were obeyd by the 1st Lieutenant who was ashore, but the second aboard seeing some canoes going along shore sent a boat to fetch them back; the boatswain commander did so and with them brought Dootahah, the rest of their crews leap’d overboard, he was sent ashore prisoner. The 1st Lieutenant of course could not do less than confine him which he did to the infinite dissatisfaction of all the Indians, this we heard from them 2 miles before we reachd the tents on our return. Tubourai, Tomaio and every Indian that we let in Joind in lamenting over Dootahah with many tears. I arrivd about a quarter of an Hour before the Captn during which time this scene lasted; as soon as he came he orderd him to be instantly set at liberty which done he walkd off sulky enough tho at his departure he presented us with a pig.

3. Dr Solander and myself who have all along acted in the capacity of market men attended this morn but no kind of provisions were brought, indeed few Indians appeard except the servants of Dootahah who very early took away his Canoe. Soon after Tubia (Obereas right hand man who was with her in the Dolphins time) came and overhauld every part of her canoe which had also been detaind, seemd satisfied with what he saw so much so that he would not take it away. About noon several fishing boats came abreast the tents,
3. they however parted with very few fish. In the course of the whole day a small quantity of bread fruit was got chiefly in a present and 6 Cocoa nuts only were bought, a very disagreeable change this from our former situation; we have now no cocoa nuts and not 1/4 enough of bread fruit for the people, who have scarce ever before faild to turn away the latter from the market and purchase of the other from 3 to 400 a day.

In the course of the day I went into the woods. The Indians were civil but every where complaind of the ill usage Dootahah had met with, they said that he had been beat and pulld by the hair; I endeavour’d all I could to convince them that no violence had been offerd to them but without success, I fear the Boatswain has been rougher in his usage of him than he chuses to acknowledge. Tupia stayd with us all day and at night slept in Oboreas Canoe not without a bedfellow tho the gentleman cannot be less than 45.

4. No trade this morn but a little fish so we are for the first time in distress for nescessaries. I went into the woods to Tubourai and perswauded him to give me 5 long baskets of bread fruit, a very seasonable supply as they contain above 120 fruits. A very few Indians appear today before the fort, fewer than yesterday. After dinner came a messenger from Dootahah requesting a shirt and a hatchet (he had been here yesterday with the same demand) I suppose in return for the hog he gave us on his release; the Captn sent him back telling him that he would tomorrow visit him and bring the things himself. In the Evening I went into the woods, found the Indians as usual civil but complaining much of the treatment Dootahah had met with on the 2nd.
Obadée (her majesty's bedfellow) came pretty early to visit us or rather himself to take a view of her canoe. He carefully overhaul'd every thing in it and complain'd of the Loss of some trifling thing I could not understand what; after this he brought every thing out of it and deliver'd them into my charge desiring that they might be taken care of, after which he left us. A very small quantity of Bread fruit brought this morn. At breakfast time came two messengers from Dootahah to put the captn in mind of his promise of Visiting him. Accordingly at 9 the boat set out carrying the Captn Dr Solander and myself. We arriv'd in about an hour, Eparre his residence being about 4 miles from the tents. An immence throng of people met us on the shore crowding us very much tho they were severely beat for so doing by a tall well looking [man] who lacz'd about him with a long stick most unmercifully, striking all who did not get out of his way without intermission till he had cleared us a path sufficient to go to Dootahah, who was seated under a tree attended by a few grave looking old men. With him we sat down and made our presents consisting of an ax and a gown of Broad cloth made after their fashion and trimm'd with tape, with these he seem'd mightily satisfied. Soon after this Oborea join'd us and with her I retir'd to a house adjacent where I could be free from the suffocating heat occasioned by so large a crowd of people as were gather'd about us. Here was prepar'd for our diversion an entertainment quite new to us, a wrestling match at which the other gentlemen soon join'd us. A large court yard raild round with Bamboo about 3 feet high was the scene of this diversion; at one end of this Dootahah was seated and near him was left seats for us but we rather chose to range at large among the spectators than confine ourselves to any particular spot. The diversion began by the combatants some of
them at least walking round the yard with a slow and grave pace every now and then striking their left arms very hard, by which they causd a deep and very loud noise, which it seems was a challenge to each other or any one of the company who chose to engage in the exercise. Within the house stood the old men ready to give applause to the victor and some few women who seem’d to be here out of compliment to us, as much the larger number absented themselves upon the occasion.

The general challenge was given as I before said, the particular one soon followd it by which any man singled out his antagonist, it was done by joining the finger ends of both hands even with the breast and then moving the Elbows up and down. If this was accepted the challenged immediately returnd the signal and instantly both put themselves in an attitude to engage, which they very soon did striving to seize each other by the hands hair or the cloth they had round their middles, for they had no other dress. This done they attempted to seize each other by the thigh which commonly decided the contest in the fall of him who was thus taken at disadvantage; if this was not soon done they always parted either by consent or their freinds interferd in less than a minute, in which case both began to clap their arms and seek anew for an antagonist either in each other or some one else.

When any one fell the whole amusement ceasd for a few moments, in which time the old men in the house gave their aplause in a few words which they repeated together in a kind of tune.

This lasted about 2 hours, all which time the man who we observd at our first Landing continued to beat the people who did not keep at a proper distance most unmercifully. We understood that he was some officer belonging to Dootahah
May 1769 Georges Land

5. and was calld his Tomîte.

The wrestling over the gentlemen informed me that they understood that 2 hoggs and a large quantity of Bread fruit &c. was cooking for our dinners, news which pleas'd me very well as my stomach was by this time sufficiently prepard for the repast. I went out and saw the ovens in which they were now buried, these the Indians readily shewed me telling me at the same time that they would soon be ready and how good a dinner we should have. In about half an hour all was taken up but now Dootahah began to repent of his intended generosity; he thought I suppose that a hog would be lookd upon as no more than a dinner and consequently no present made in return, he therefore changd his mind and ordering one of the pigs into the boat sent for us who soon collected together and getting our Knives prepard to fall too, saying that it was civil of the old gentleman to bring the provisions into the boat where we could with ease keep the people at a proper distance, who in the house would have crouded us almost to death. His intention was however very different from ours for instead of asking us to eat he ask’d to go on board of the ship, a measure we were forcd to comply with and row 4 miles with the pig growing cold under our noses before he would give it to us. Aboard however we dind upon this same pig and his majesty eat very heartily with us. After dinner we went ashore, the sight of Dootahah reconcild to us acted like a charm upon the people and before night bread fruit and cocoa nuts were brought to sell in tolerable plenty.

6. Plenty of bread-fruit at market this morn but few cocoa nuts. After dinner Dootahah visited the tents bringing 5 baskets of breadfruit and some cocoa nuts; he went to the eastward and slept tonight at the long house.
6. Trade rather slack this morn, but we have so much bread-fruit before hand from the trade and presents of yesterday that [it] is immaterial whether we buy any or not today.

7. After dinner Dootahah came in a double canoe, after him came another bringing 4 hogs and one of these he orderd out of the boat with some bread fruit. I undertook to coax him out of the rest but had not the success I could have wishd, he would part with only one more and for that both the Captn and myself were obligd to go aboard with him and give him a broad ax.

8. Msrs Molineux and Green went to the eastward today in the pinnace intending to purchase hoggs. They went 20 miles, saw many hogs and one turtle but the people would part with neither one nor the other, they belongd they said to Dootahah and without his leave they could not sell them. We now begin to think that Dootahah is indeed a great king much greater than we have been usd to imagine him, indeed his influence upon the late occasion as well as today has prov’d to be so great that we can hardly doubt it. Mr Green measurd today a tree which he saw, it provd to be 60 yards in circumference. He brought home some boughs of it but they were thrown overboard before I could see them so the species of this monstrous tree remains a doubt with us.

This morn I fix’d my little boat before the door of the Fort, it serves very well for a place to trade in. Trade is not now as it has been, formerly we usd to buy enough for all hands between sunrise and 8 O’Clock now attendance must be given all day or little can be done.

9. Cocoa nuts have been for some days rather scarce, we are therefore obligd for the first time to bring out our nails. Last night our smallest size about 4
9. inches long were offerd for 20 Cocoa nutts, accordingly this morn several came with that number so that we had plenty of them. Smaller lots as well as bread fruit sold as usual for beads.

Soon after breakfast Came Oborea, Obadee and Tupia bringing a hog and some breadfruit; they stayd with us till night then took away their canoe and promisd to return in 3 days. We had to day 350 Cocoa nuts and more bread fruit than we would buy so that we aproach our former plenty.

10. This morn Captn Cooke planted divers seeds which he had brought with him in a spot of ground turnd up for the purpose. They were all bought of Gordon at Mile End and sent in bottles seald up, whether or no that method will succeed the event of this plantation will shew. Plenty of Bread fruit and cocoanuts again today. Towards evening Tubourai and Tomio returnd from the west and seemd extreemly glad to see all of us.

We have now got the Indian name of the Island, Otahite, so therefore for the future I shall call it. As for our own names the Indians find so much difficulty in pronouncing them that we are forcd to indulge them in calling us what they please, or rather what they say when they attempt to pronounce them. I give here the List: Captn Cooke Tootë, Dr Solander Torâno, Mr Hicks Hete, Mr Gore Toárro, Mr Molineux Boba from his Christian name Robert, Mr Monkhouse Mato, and myself Tapâne. In this manner they have names for almost every man in the ship.
11. Cocoa nuts were brought down so plentifully this morn that by 1/2 past 6 I had bought 350: this made it necessary to drop the price of them least so many being brought at once we should exhaust the countrey and want hereafter; notwithstanding I had before night bought more than a thousand at the rates of 6 for an amber coulourd bead, 10 for a white one, and 20 for a fortypenny nail.

12. Cocoa nuts very plentifull this morning. About breakfast time Dootahah visits us. Immediately after while I sat trading in the boat at the door of the fort a double Canoe came with several women and one man under the awning. The Indians round me made signs that I should go out and meet them, by the time I had got out of the boat they were within ten yards of me. The people made a lane from them to me. They stopd and made signs for me to do the same. The man in company with them had in his hand a large bunch of boughs; he advanced towards me bringing two, one a young plantain the other [?]

Tupia who stood by me acted as my deputy in receiving them and laying them down in the boat: 6 times he passd backwards and forwards in the same manner and bringing the same present. Another man than came forward having in his arms a large bundle of cloth, this he open'd out and spread it peice by peice on the ground between the women and me, it consisted on nine peices. Three were first laid. The foremost of the women, who seemd to be the principal, then stepd upon them and quickly unveiling all her charms gave me a most convenient opportunity of admiring them by turning herself gradualy round: 3 peices more were laid and she repeated her
12. part of the ceremony: the other three were then laid which made a treble covering of the ground between her and me, she then once more displayd her naked beauties and immediately March'd up to me, a man following her and doubling up the cloth as he came forwards which she immediately made me understand was intended as a present for me. I took her by the hand and led her to the tents accompanied by another woman her freind, to both of them I made presents but could not prevail upon them to stay more than an hour. In the evening Oborea and her favourite attendant Othéothéa pay us a visit, much to my satisfaction as the latter (my flame) has for some days been reported either ill or dead.

13. Our Freinds with us this morn in very good time as they generaly are, very shortly after sunrise plenty of cocoa nuts &c. at the market. After it was over, about 10 O’Clock, I walkd into the woods with my gun, as I generaly did to spend the heat of the day in the Indian houses where I could be cool from the shade of the trees which every where grow about them. In my return I met Tubourai near his house; I stopd with him, he took my gun out of my hand, cockd it and holding it up in the air drew the trigger, fortunately for him it flashd in the pan. Where he had got so much knowledge of the use of a gun I could not conceive but was sufficiently angry that he should attempt to exersise it upon mine, as I had upon all occasions taught him and the rest of the Indians that they could not offend me so much as even to touch it. I scolded him severely and even threatned to shoot him. He bore all patiently but the moment I had crossd the river he and his family bag and baggage movd of to their other house at
13. **Eparre.** This step was no sooner taken than I was informed of it by the Indians about the fort. Not willing to lose the assistance of a man who had upon all occasions been particularly useful to us I resolved to go this evening and bring him back, accordingly as soon as dinner was over I set out accompanied by Mr Molineux. We found him setting in the middle of a large circle of people, himself and many of the rest with most melancholy countenances some in tears; one old woman on our coming into the circle struck a shark's tooth into her head many times till it foamed with blood but her head seemed to have been so often exercised with this expression of grief that it was become quite callous, for though the crown of it was covered with blood enough did not issue from the wounds to run upon her cheeks. After some few assurances of forgiveness Tubourai agreed to return with us, in consequence of which resolution a double canoe was put off in which we all returned to the tents before supper time, and as a token of a renewal of friendship both him and his wife slept in my tent all night.

About 11 one of the natives attempted to scale our walls intending no doubt to steal whatever he could find, but seeing himself observed he made off much faster than any of our people could follow him.

14. Our friends Dootahah, Oborea, Otheothea &c. at the tents this morn as usual. It being Sunday Captn Cooke proposed that divine service should be celebrated but before the proper time of doing it most of our Indian friends were gone home to eat. I was resolved however that some should be present that they might see our behaviour and we might if possible explain to them (in some degree at least) the reasons of it. I went therefore over the river and brought
14. back Tubourai and Tomio and having seated them in the tent plac’d myself between them. During the whole service they imitated my motions, standing setting or kneeling as they saw me do, and so much understood that we were about something very serious that they calld to the Indians without the fort to be silent; notwithstanding this they did not when the service was over ask any questions nor would they attend at all to any explanation we attempted to give them. We have not yet seen the least traces of religion among these people, maybe they are intirely with out it.

15. In the course of last night one of the Indians was clever enough to steal an Iron bound cask; it was indeed without the fort but so immediately under the eye of the Sentry that we could hardly beleive the possibility of such a thing having [happened] when we lookd at the place. The Indians however acknowledg’d it and seemd inclind to give intelligence, in consequence of which I set off in pursuit of it and tracd it to a part of the bay where they told me it had been put into a canoe. The thing was not of consequence enough to pursue with any great spirit so I returnd home where I found Oborea, Otheothea, Obadee &c. At night Tubourai made many signs that another cask would be stole before morning, and thinking I suppose that we did not sufficiently regard them himself his wife and family came to the place where the cask[s] lay and making their beds said that they would themselves take care that no one should steal them. On being told this I went to them and explaining to them that a Sentry was this night put over those particular casks they agreed to come and sleep in my tent, but insisted upon leaving a servant to assist the sentry in case the theif came, which he did about 12 and was seen by the Sentry who fird at him on which he retreated most expeditiously.
16. The morning wet and disagreeable. We hauled the Seine in several parts of the bay without the least success; the Indians are so fond of fish and so expert in catching it, using almost every method we do in Europe, that our want of success is not at all to be wondered at. Tonight Tubourai, Tamio, Oborea, Obadee and Otheothea slept in my tent. At midnight the water casks were again attempted and two shot fired at the thief which alarmed my bedfellows not a little, they were however soon quieted by my going out and bringing back word of the reason of the firing.

17. Fine weather. Oborea and her friends went early to Eparre as the rest of our chiefs did yesterday in 18 double canoes, so that we are quite dull for want of company in the tents. Tubourai and Tamio slept with me as usual.

18. Fine weather and good market, the apples begin now to be ripe and are brought in in large quantities very cheap so that apple pies are a standing dish with us.

19. This morning Tubourai who had slept [with] me as usual was observd by my servant to have an uncommonly large nail under his clothes, this I was informd of and knowing that no such had been either given or dispos’d of in trade was obligd to suspect my freind of theft. I therefore went instantly to his house and chargd him with it, he immediately confessd but atempted to keep his booty by telling me that the nail was gone to Eparre. I became much in earnest and a few threats soon produc’d the stolen goods. I was more hurt at the discovery than he was, I firmly beleive he was the only Indian I trusted and in him I had placd a most unbounded confidence, this event shews more than he could bear: 7 of these nails lay in a basket in one of the tents and on examining it 5 were missing.
May 1769

19. I thought it necessary after this discovery to bring the offender to the tents to receive judgement which I did. Every body there was of opinion that his fault was pardonable. I confess that upon thinking over the circumstances I blam’d myself more for leaving the nails in his way than him for stealing them. It was therefore resolvd that if he brought back the other 4 he should be forgiven and his fault forgot: this I told him and he agreed readily, but instead of performing his part he and his family movd off before night taking with them all their furniture.

20. Rain and very disagreeable weather so that we had but little trade. About 10 Oborea came to the fort and brough[t] a large present of bread fruit, she had with her Otheothea and her other maids of honour as we call them but Obadee her gentleman attendant was absent. We enquird the reason, she told us that she had dismiss’d him; about 8 however he came by torch light and going to the house in the woods where she slept slept with her.

21. Sunday, Divine service performd, at which was present Oborea, Otheothea, Obadee, &c. all behav’d very decently. After dinner Obadee who had been for some time absent returnd to the fort. Oborea desird he might not be let in, his countenance was however so melancholy that we could not but admit him. He lookd most piteously at Oborea, she most disdainfully at him; she seems to us to act in the character of a Ninon d’Enclos who satiated with her lover resolves to change him at all Events, the more so as I am offerd if I please to supply his place, but I am at present otherwise engag’d; indeed was I free as air her majesties person is not the most desireable.
22. This morning showery and cool, seemingly a good opportunity of going upon the hills. I went accompanied only by Indians, indeed all of them but one soon left me, he however accompanied me during my whole walk. The paths were very open and clear till I came to the woods but afterwards very bad, so much so that I could not reach the top of the lowest of the two high hills seen from the fort, which was all I intended. I was in some measure however recompens'd by finding several plants which I had not before seen, with which I returnd before sunset, and had Oborea, Obadee and Otheothea to sleep with me in my tent.

23. Trade very slack today, so much so that we have only Cocoa nuts for the sick, and the people are obligd to have bread servd them at dinner.

24. We had receivd repeated messages from Dootahah signifying that if we would go and visit him we should have 4 hogs for our pains; in consequence of this our first Lieutenant was sent today with orders to go to him and try if by any civilities he could shew him he could procure them. He found him removd from his old residence at Eparre to a place call'd Tettaháh about 5 miles farther. He was reciv’d with great cordiality, one hog was immediately producd and he was told that the others should be brough[t] somewhere from a distance if he would stay till next morning. This he did not at all scruple, the morning came however without the hogs so he was obligd to return with the one he had got over night not a little dissatisfied with Dootahahs nonperformance of his promises.

Msrs Monkhouse and Green atempted this day
24. to climb the same hill that I attempted on the 22nd, with much the same success; they got however higher than I did but could not reach the summit.

25. **Tubourai** and **Tamio** made their appearance at the fort for the first time since the breach of the 19th, he in particular seemed much frightned nor did my behavior to him give him much comfort. I had resolvd not to restore him either to my freindship or confidence unless he restord the nails which he seemd to have no intention of dooing; after staying a little time he went home sulky as he came.

26. Mr Monkhouse who I think is rather too partial to **Tubourai** went this morn to his house intending to persuade him to come to the tents. He made many excuses, he was hungry, he must sleep, his head achd, in short he would not nor did not come. **Tamio** however did but took alarm at my being absent who was aboard of the ship and soon departed.

27. This day Mr Monkhouse went to **Eparre** with **Tubourai** and Tamio. Market tolerable. Mr Hicks in his return from Dootahah brought word that if the Captn would go over the 4 piggs would be given to him: this producd a resolution of going tomorrow, tho we none of us much credited his promise, yet we would leave no stone unturnd to keep him in good humour. I omitted to mention on the 25th that the longboat being very leaky was hauld dry and her bottom found to be eat intirely through by the worm, which surprizes us much as the Dolphins boats met with no such inconvenience: her bottom was payd with brimstone and tallow. The pinnace which has been in the water as long as her is totaly untouchd which we atribute to hers being painted with white lead and oil.
28. This morn the pinnace set out for the Eastward with the Captn Dr Solander and myself. Dootahah was removd from Tettahah where Mr Hicks saw him on the 24th to Atahourou, about 6 miles farther, a place to which the boat could not go. We were resolv’d not to be disapointed so walkd afoot. It was evening before we arrivd, we found him setting under a tree with a vast croud about him as usual; we made our presents in due form consisting of a yellow stuff peticoat &c. which were graciously receivd, and a hog immediately [brought] with many promises of more in the morning. Night came on apace, it was nescessary to look out for lodgings; as Dootahah made no offer of any I repaird to my old Freind Oborea who readily gave me a bed in her canoe much to my satisfaction. I acquainted my fellow travelers with my good fortune and wishing them as good took my leave. We went to bed early as is the custom here: I strippd myself for the greater convenience of sleeping as the night was hot. Oborea insisted that my cloths should be put into her custody, otherwise she said they would certainly be stolen. I readily submitted and laid down to sleep with all imaginable tranquility. About 11 I awakd and wanting to get up felt for my clothes in the place in which I had seen them laid at night but they were missing. I awakd Oborea, she started up and on my complaining of the Loss candles were immediately lit. Dootahah who slept in the next canoe came to us and both went in search of the theif, for such it seems it was who had stolen my coat and waistcoat with my pistols powder horn &c., they returnd however in about 1/2 an hour without any news of the stolen
28. goods. I began to be a little alarmd, my musquet was left me, but that by my neglect the night before was not loaded; I did not know where Captn Cooke or Dr Solander had disposd of themselves, consequently could not call upon them for assistance; Tupia stood near me awakd by the Hubbub that had been raisd on account of my Loss; to him I gave my Musquet charging him to take care that the theif did not get it from him, and betook myself again to rest, telling my companions in the boat that I was well satisfied with the pains that Oborea and Dootahah had taken for the recovery of my things. Soon after I heard their musick and saw lights near me; I got up and went towards them, it was a heiva or assembly according to their custom. Here I saw Captn Cooke and told my melancholy story, he was my fellow sufferer, he had lost his stockins and two young gentlemen who were with him had lost each a Jacket. Dr Solander was away we neither of us knew where: we talkd over our losses and agreed that nothing could be done toward recovering them till the morning, after which we parted and went to our respective sleeping places.

29. At day break we rose according to the custom of our companions. Tupia was the first man I saw, atending with my Musquet and the remainder of my cloaths, his faith had often been tried, on this occasion it shone very much. Oborea took care to provide me with cloth to supply the place of my lost Jacket so that I made a motley apearance, my dress being half English and half Indian. Dootahah soon
29. after made his appearance; I pressd him to recover my Jacket but neither he nor Oborea would take the least step towards it so that I am almost inclind to beleive that they acted principals in the theft. Indeed if they did it may be said in their excuse that they knew I had in my pockets a pair of pistols, weopons to them more dreadfull than a cannon to a man marching up to its mouth: could they get possession of them they thought no doubt that they would be as usefull to them as to us; self defence and preservation therefore in this case came in opposition to the laws of hospitality, duties to which mankind usualy give the preference in all cases.

About 8 Dr Solander returnd from a house about a mile off where he had slept: he had met with more honest companions than we had for nothing of his was missing. We spent the most of the morning in trying to persuade our freinds either to restore our cloaths or give us some hogs acording to promise, but neiether could we do, so we were forcd to set out for the boat with only the pig got yesterday, dissatisfied enough with our expedition.

In our return to the boat we saw the Indians amuse or excersise themselves in a manner truly surprizing. It was in a place where the shore was not guarded by a reef as is usualy the case, consequently a high surf fell upon the shore, a more deadfull one I have not often seen: no European boat could have landed in it and I think no European who had by any means got into [it] could possibly have saved his life,
29. as the shore was coverd with pebbles and large stones. In the midst of these breakers 10 or 12 Indians were swimming who whenever a surf broke near them divd under it with infinite ease, rising up on the other side; but their chief amusement was carried on by the stern of an old canoe, with this before them they swam out as far as the outermost breach, then one or two would get into it and opposing the blunt end to the breaking wave were hurried in with incredible swiftness. Sometimes they were carried almost ashore but generally the wave broke over them before they were half way, in which case the[y] divd and quickly rose on the other side with the canoe in their hands, which was towd out again and the same method repeated. We stood admiring this very wonderfull scene for full half an hour, in which time no one of the actors atempted to come ashore but all seemd most highly entertaind with their strange diversion.

30. Carpenters employd today in repairing the long boat which is eat in a most wonderfull manner, every part of her bottom is like a honeycomb and some of the holes 1/8th of an inch in diameter, such a progress has this destructive insect made in six weeks.

31. The day of Observation now aproaches. The weather has been for some days fine, tho in general since we have been upon the Island we have had as
31. much cloudy as clear weather, which makes us all not a little anxious for success. In consequence of hints from Lord Morton the Captn resolves to send a party to the eastward, and another to Imão, an Island in sight of us, thinking that in case of thick weather one or the other might be more successfull than the observatory. The Carpenters work very hard to finish the long boat. I resolve to go on the Imáo expedition.

JUNE 1769

1. The boat could not be got ready till after dinner when we set out; we rowd most of the night and came to a grapling just under the land of Imáo.

2. Soon after day break we saw an Indian canoe and upon hailing her she shewed us an inlet through the reef, into [which] we pulld and soon fixd upon a Coral rock about 150 yards from the shore as a very proper situation for our Observatory; it was about 80 yards long and 60 broad and had in the middle of it a bed of white sand large enough for our tents to stand upon. The 2nd Lieutent and people therefore immediately set about it while I went upon the main Island to trade with the inhabitants for provisions, of which I soon bought a sufficient supply. Before night our observatory was in order, telescopes all set up and tried &c. and we went to rest anxious for the events of tomorrow; the evening having been very fine gave us however great hopes of success.

3. Various were the Changes observd in the weather during the course of last night, some one or other of us was up every half hour who constantly informd the rest that it was either clear or Hazey, at day break we rose
3. and soon after had the satisfaction of seeing the sun rise as clear and bright as we could wish him. I then wishd success to the observers Mssrs Gore and Monkhouse and repaird to the Island, where I could do the double service of examining the natural produce and buying provisions for my companions who were engagd in so usefull a work. About eight a large quantity of provisions were procurd when I saw two boats coming towards the place where I traded; these I was told belongd to Tarróa the King of the Island who was coming to pay me a visit. As soon as the boats came near the shore the people formd a lane; he landed bringing with him his sister Nuna and both came towards the tree under which I stood. I went out and met them and brought them very formaly into a circle I had made, into which I had before sufferd none of the natives to come. Standing is not the fashion among these people, I must provide them a seat, which I did by unwrapping a turban of Indian cloth which I wore instead of a hat and spreading it upon the ground; upon which we all sat down and the kings present was brought Consisting of a hog, a dog and a quantity of Bread fruit Cocoa nuts &c. I immediately sent a canoe to the Observatory to fetch my present, an adze a shirt and some beads with which his majesty seemd well satisfied. Tubourai and Tamio who came with us now came from the observatory; she said that she was related to Tarroa and brought him a present, a long nail and a shirt, which she gave to Nuna. After the first Internal contact was over I went to my Companions at the observatory carrying with me Tarroa, Nuna and some of their cheif attendants; to them we shewd the planet upon the sun and made them understand that we came
3. on purpose to see it. After this they went back and myself with them. I spent the rest of the day in examining the produce &c. of the Island and found it very nearly similar to that of Otahite, the people exactly the same, indeed we saw many of the Identical same people as we had often seen at Otahite, and every one knew well every kind of trade we had and the value it bore in that Island. The hills in general came nearer to the water and flats were consequently less, and less Fertile, than at Otahite - the low point near which we lay was composd intirely of sand and coral. Here neither Breadfruit nor any usefull vegetables would grow; it was coverd over with Pandanus tectorius and with these grew several plants we had not seen at Otahite, among them Iberis [?], which Mr Gore tells me is the plant calld by the voyagers scurvy grass which grows plentifully upon all the low Islands.

At sunset I came off having purchasd another hog from the King. Soon after my arrival at the tent 3 hansome girls came off in a canoe to see us, they had been at the tent in the morning with Tarroa, they chatted with us very freely and with very little perswasion agreed to send away their carriage and sleep in [the] tent, a proof of confidence which I have not before met with upon so short an acquaintance.

4. We prepard ourselves to depart, in spite of the intreaties of our fair companions who persuaded us much to stay. What with presents and trade our stock of Provisions was so large that we were obligd to give away a large quantity. This done we put off and before night arrivd at the tents, where we had the great satisfaction that the observation there had been attended with as much
4. success as Mr Green and the Captn could wish, the day having been perfectly clear not so much as a cloud interveining. We also heard the melancholy news that a large part of our stock of Nails had been purloind by some of the ships company during the time of the Observation, when every body was ashore who had any degree of comand. One of the theives was detected but only 7 nails were found upon him out of 100 Wt and he bore his punishment without impeaching any of his acomplices. This loss is of a very serious nature as these nails if circulated by the people among the Indians will much lessen the value of Iron, our staple commodity.

5. During our absence at Imao an old woman of some consequence, a relation of Tamio, was dead and was plac’d not far from the fort to rot above ground as is the custom of the Island. I went this morn to see her. A small square was neatly raild in with Bamboe and in the midst of it a Canoe awning set up upon two posts, in this the body was laid coverd with fine cloth. Near this was laid fish &c. meat for the gods not for the deceasd, but to satisfie the hunger of the deitys least they shoud eat the body, which Tubourai told us they would certainly do if this ceremony was neglected. In the front of the square was a kind of stile or place lower than the rest, where the relations of the deceas’d stood when they cry’d or bled themselves, and under the awning were numberless rags containing the blood and tears they had shed. Within a few yards were two occasional houses; in one of them some of the relations constantly remaind generaly a good many; in the other the cheif male mourner resided and kept a very remarkable
5. Dress in which he performd a ceremony, both which I shall describe when I have an opportunity of seeing it in perfection which Tubourai promises me I shall soon have.

This day we kept the Kings birthday which had been delayd on account of the absence of the two observing parties; several of the Indians dind with us and drank his majesties health by the name of Kihiargo, for we could not teach them to pronounce a word more like King George. Tupia however to shew his Loyalty got most enormously drunk.

6. In walking into the woods yesterday I saw in the hands of an Indian an Iron tool made in the shape of the Indian adzes, very different I was sure from any thing that had been carried out or made either by the Dolphin or this ship. This excited my curiosity, much the more so when I was told that it did not come out of either of those ships but from two others which came here together. This was a discovery not to be neglected. With much difficulty and labour I at last got the following account of them, viz, that in their month of Pepére which answers to our January 1768 2 Spanish ships came here commanded by a man whom they calld To Otterah; that they lay 8 days in a bay calld Hidea, some leagues to the eastward of Matavie where the ship now lies; that during their stay they sent tents ashore and some slept in them; that they were chiefly connected with a cheif whose name was Orétte, whose younger brother they carried away with them promising to return in nine months; that they had on board their ships a woman; and that on their departure they
6. stood to the westward as long as they were seen from the Island. I was very particular in these inquiries as the Knowledge got by them may be of some consequence. The methods I took to gain this account would be much too tedious to mention: one of my greatest difficulties was to determine of what nation they were which was done thus, I pointed to our colours and ask’d whether the ships had such or not. No, was the answer when the question was thoroughly understood. I open’d a large sheet of Flaggs and askd which of them they had: Tubourai lookd stedfastly over them and at last pitchd upon the Spanish ensign and to that he adhered tho we tryd him over and over.

7. We were this morn visited by several of Dootahahs relations women especialy, probably to sound us upon the score of our usage at Atahourou. We had resolvd at that place rather to put up with our losses than to mattow or frighten the Indians, the consequence of which we knew to be scarcity of provisions; we therefore treated these people very well, making them presents to tempt them to come again and bring Dootahah, king of the hogs as we calld him and certainly have always found him.

8. Fresh proofs of the Spanish ships every day in thing[s] of theirs which have been left here, among the rest a course shirt and a woolen jacket both of manufacture different from any English.

9. Yesterday and today the Heiva no Meduah or funeral ceremony walkd. My curiosity was raisd by his most singular dress. I was desirous of knowing what he did during his walk; I askd Tubourai, at the same time desird leave to atend him tomorrow which upon my consenting to perform a character was readily
9. granted. Tomorrow therefore I am to be smutted from head to foot and to do whatever they desire me to do. Bread fruit has for some time been scarce with us; about 10 days ago the trees were thinnd all at once from their being a great shew of fruit; every one was employd in making Mahie for about a week. Where the breadfruit we now have comes from we cannot tell, but we have more than the woods in our neighbourhood can supply us with. Probably our consumption has thinnd the trees in this neighbourhood, as the Dolphins who came here about this time saw great plenty all the time they stayd; if this is the case what we now get may be brought from some neig[h]bouring place where the trees are not yet exhausted.

10. This evening according to my yesterdays engagement I went to the place where the medua lay, where I found Tubourai, Tamio, Hoona the Meduas daughter and a young Indian prepard to receive me. Tubourai was the Heiva, the three others and myself were to Nineveh. He put on his dress, most Fantastical tho not unbecoming, the figure annexd will explain it far better than words can. I was next prepard by stripping off my European cloths and putting me on a small strip of cloth round my waist, the only garment I was allowd to have, but I had no pretensions to be ashamd of my nakedness for neither of the women were a bit more coverd than myself. They then began to smut me and themselves with charcoal and water, the Indian boy was compleatly black, the women and myself as low as our shoulders. We then set out. Tubourai began by praying twice, one near the Corps again near his own house. We then proceeded towards the fort: it was nesscessary it seems that
10. the procession should visit that place but they dare not
do it without the sanction of some of us, indeed it
was not till many assurances of our consent that they
ventured to perform any part of their ceremonies. To the
fort then we went to the surprize of our freinds and
affright of the Indians who were there, for they every
where fly before the *Heiva* like sheep before a wolf.
We soon left it and proceeded along shore towards a
place where above 100 Indians were collected together.
We the *Nineveh* had orders from the *Heiva* to disperse
them, we ran towards them but before we cam[e] within
100 yards of them they dispers’d every way, running to
the first shelter, hiding themselves under grass or
whatever else would conceal them. We now crossd the
river into the woods and passd several houses, all were
deserted, not another Indian did we see for about 1/2 an
hour that we sepnt in walking about. We the *Nineveh*
then came to the *Heiva* and said *imatata*, there are no
people; after which we repaird home, the *Heiva*
undressd and we went into the river and scrubbd one
another till it was dark before the blacking would come
off.

11. This Evening *Tbourai* came to the tents bringing a bow
and arrows, in consequence of a challenge Mr Gore had
given him sometime ago to shoot. This challenge was
however misunderstood, *Tbourai* meant to try who
could shoot the farthest, Mr Gore to shoot at a mark and
neither was at all practisd in what the other valued
himself upon. *Tbourai* to please us shot in his way; he
knelt down and drew the bow and as soon as he let slip
the string droppd the bow from his hand,
11. the arrow however went 274 yards.

12. In my mornings walk today I met a company of traveling musicians; they told me where they should be at night so after supper we all repaird to the place. There was a large concourse of people round this band, which consisted of 2 flutes and three drums, the drummers accompanying their musick with their voices; they sung many songs generaly in praise of us, for these gentlemen like Homer of old must be poets as well as musicians. The Indians seeing us entertaind with their musick, aske us to sing them an English song, which we most readily agreed to and receivd much applause, so much so that one of the musicians became desirous of going to England to learn to sing. These people by what we can learn go about from house to house, the master of the house and the audience paying them for their musick in cloth, meat, beads or any thing else which the one wants and the other can spare.

13. Mr Monkhouse our surgeon met to day with an insult from an Indian, the first that has been met with by any of us. He was pulling a flower from a tree which grew on a burying ground and consequently was I suppose sacred, when an Indian came behind him and struck him; he seiz’d hold of him and attempted to beat him, but was prevented by two more who coming up seizd hold of his hair and rescued their companion after which they all ran away.

14. I lay in the woods last night as I very often did. At day break I was calld up by Mr Gore and went with him shooting,
14. from which party we did not return till night when we saw a large number of Canoes in the river behind the tents, of which we had this account. Last night an Indian was clever enough to steal a Coal rake out of the fort without being perceivevd. In the Morning it was missing and Captn Cooke being resolvd to recover it, as also to discourage such atempts for the future, went out with a party of men and seizd 25 of their large sailing Canoes which were just come in from Tethuora, a neighbouring Island, with a supply of fish for the inhabitants of this. The Coal rake was upon this soon brought back but Captn Cooke thought he had now in his hands an opportunity of recovering all the things which had been stolen: he therefore proclaimed to every one that till all the things which had been stolen from us were brought back the boats should not stir, a list of these was immediately drawn up and read several times to the Indians, who readily promisd that every thing should be brought back. Great application was made to me in my return that some of these might be releasd. I did not till I got to the fort understand the reason of their being detaind, and when I did nothing apeard so plain as that no one of them should on any account be let go from favour, but the whole kept till the things were [returnd] if ever they were, which I much doubted as the Canoes pretty certainly did not belong to the people who had stolen the things. I confess had I taken a step so violent I would have seizd either the persons of the people who had stolen from us, most of whom we either knew or shrewdly suspected, or their goods at
14. least instead of those of people who are intirely unconcernd in the affair and have not probably interest enough with their superiors (to whom all valuable things are carried) to procure the restoration demanded.

15. Some few presents today but no trade at all. We found ourselves today involved in an unexpected difficulty with regard to the boats: they were loaded with provisions which their owners must live upon or starve, in consequence of which they ask leave to go and take them out and are allowed to do so as much as they can eat. We are not able however to distinguish the true owners, so many avail themselves of this indulgence by stealing their neighbours which we cannot prevent, indeed in a few days more the whole consisting chiefly of fish (curd to keep about that time) will be spoiled.

16. Some presents today but no trade. Several petitions for canoes backed by our principal friends but none complied with. In the afternoon the body of the old woman which lay near us was removed, but to what place or on what account we could not learn.

17. This morn Mr Gore and myself went to Oparre to shoot Ducks, little thinking what the consequence of our expedition would be; for before we had half filled our bags we had frightened away Dootahah and all his household and furniture, a matter of no small diversion to us to find his majesty so much more fearfull than his ducks.

18. This morn the boat was sent to get Ballast for the ship; the officer sent in her not finding stones convenient began to pull down a burying ground. To this the Indians objected much and [a] messenger came to the tents saying
18. that they would not suffer it. I went with the 2nd Lieutenant to the place. They had desired them to desist from destroying the burying ground they had began upon, but shewed them another. The officer however though[t] it best not to molest any thing of the kind and sent the people to the river where they gatherd stones very easily without a possibility of offending anybody.

19. The fish in the Canoes stink most immoderately so as in some winds to render our situation in the tents rather disagreeable. This evening Oborea, Otheothea and Tuarua came to visit us for the first time since the affair of the Jacket; they were very desirous of sleeping in the fort but my Marque[e] was full of Indians and no one else chose to entertain them, so they were obligd to repair to their Canoes to sleep there rather out of humour.

20. This morn early Oborea and Co came to the tents bringing a large quantity of provisions as a present, among the rest a very fat dog. We had lately learnt that these animals were eat by the Indians and esteemed more delicate food than Pork, now therefore was our opportunity of trying the experiment. He was immediately given over to Tupia who finding that it was a food that we were not accustomed to undertook to stand butcher and cook both. He killd him by stopping his breath, holding his hands fast over his mouth and nose, an operation which took up above a quarter of an hour; he then proceeded to dress him much in the same manner as we would do a pig, singing him over the fire which was lighted to roast him and scraping him clean with a shell. He then opeend him with the same instrument.
20. and taking out his entrails pluck & c. sent them to the sea where they were most carefully washd, and then put into Cocoa nut shells with what blood he had found in him. The stones were now laid and the dog well coverd with leaves laid upon them. In about two hours he was dressd and in another quarter of an hour compleatly eat. A most excellent dish he made for us who were not much prejudicd against any species of food; I cannot however promise that an European dog would eat as well, as these scarce in their lives touch animal food, Cocoa nut kernel, Bread fruit, yams & c, being what their masters can best afford to give them and what indeed from custom I suppose they preferr to any kind of food.

21. This Morning came Oámo, a cheif we had not before seen; with him came a boy and a young woman to whom all the people present shewd a most uncommon respect, every one taking their garments from their shoulders and wrapping them round their breasts. We were upon this very desirous of shewing them all the respect we could as well as learning who they were: we could not however prevail upon the woman to come into the tents tho she seemd very desirous of it, the people all joind in preventing her by their advice at some times almost using force; the boy was in the same manner kept without. Dr Solander met him by accident close by the gate and laying hold of his hand he followd him in before the people were aware; those in the tents however very soon sent him out again.
21. Upon inquiry we find that this boy is son to Oamo and Oboreea who are husband and wife, but have long ago been parted by a mutual consent which gives both leave to enjoy the pleasures of this life without controul from their former engagements. The girl about 16 is intended for his wife but he being not more than 8 years old they have not yet cohabited together.

22. Our visiters returnd early this morn, Oborea, Otheothea, Oamo &c. &c. The latter begins to shew himself a very sensible man by the shrewd questions he asks about England its manners and customs &c. Much interest is made to procure the release of the boats, indeed Captn Cooke is now tird of keeping them as he finds that not the least motion is made towards returning any of the stol’n goods; four of them are therefore set at liberty.

23. Our Freinds with us as usual. One of our seamen a Portugese was last night missing; as there was no news of him this Morning we concluded that he was run away and meant to stay among the Indians. Captn Cooke therefore offerd a hatchet to any man who would bring him back, one soon offerd and returnd with him at night. He said that two Indians seizd him and stopping his mouth forced him away, but as he was out of the fort after a woman this account apeard improbable, the man was however not punishd.

24. Our freinds all went to the westward last night; nothing material happend during our solitude. The market has been totaly stoppd ever since the boats were seizd, nothing being offerd to sale but a few apples;
24. our freinds however are liberal in presents so that we make a shift to live without expending our bread, which and spirits are the most valuable articles to us. Late in the evening Tubourai and Tamio returnd from Eparre bringing with them several presents, among the rest a large peice of thick cloth which they desird that I would carry home to my Sister Opia, and for which they would take no kind of return. They are often very inquisitive about our families and remember any thing that is told them very well.

25. Prayers today it being sunday, soon after Potattow and Polotheara came to see us.

26. At 3 O’clock this morn Captn Cooke and myself set out to the eastward in the pinnace, intending if it was convenient to go round the Island, the weather calm and pleasant. We rowd till 8 and then went ashore in a district calld Ohiana governd by a cheif calld Ahio, who favourd us with his company to breakfast. Here we saw our old acquaintances Tituboalo and Hoona, who carried me immediately to their House near which was placd the body of the old woman which was removd from Matavie on the 16th. This it seems was the estate which descended to Hoona by inheritance from her and it was on that account nescessary that she should be brought here. From hence we proceeded on foot, the boat attending within call, till we came to Ahidea the place where the Spanyards were said to lay. We met with the cheif their freind Orété, whose brother Outorrou went with them. Our inquiries here were very particular and we had
26. the account I have before given confirmd; they shewd us also the place where the ships lay, which is situate on the west side of the great bay under the shelter of a small Island calld Booóírou near which is another calld Taawirry. The breach in the reef was here very large but the shelter for ships indifferent. We saw also the place where their tents were pitchd: they pointed out the hole in which each pole stood and shewd one corner in which they set up a cross I had made for them, and said Turu turu which in their language signifies the knees. In searching about upon this spot I found a small peice of potsheard or tile, a sure proof tho a small one that in place at least the indians had not deceivd me.

Soon after this we took boat and askd Tituboaro to go with us. He refusd and advisd us not to go: on the other side of the bay he said livd people who were not subjects to Dootahah and who would kill him and us. On seeing us put balls into our musquets he however consented to go with us. We rowd till dark at which time we arrivd at the bottom of the deep bay; we were not yet among our enemies, we might go ashore and sleep with safety. We did so but found few houses, here were however some double canoes whose owners were known to us; they provided us with supper and lodgins, for my share of which I was indebted to Ourattooa a Lady remarkable among us for the ceremonies she performd on the 12th of May last.

27. At day break we turnd out to see a little of the countrey about us which we did not arrive at last
27. night till dark. We found the traces of Canoes having been hauld inland and the people told us that the Island was in this place very narrow and that they draggd their canoes quite across cheifly over soft boggs. - We now prepar'd to set out for the other Kingdom for so we are told it is, Calld *Tiarreboo* and governd by *Waheatua*, as ours is called *Oboreonoo* and governd by *Dootahah*. Tituboalo is in better spirits now than yesterday, they will not kill us he says but they have got no meat. Indeed we had not since we came out seen a bit of breadfruit; we thought that we might have exhausted it in this part of the Island but hop’d to find plenty in the other, the people of which if enemies had certainly not traded with us.

After a few miles rowing we landed in a District calld *Annuúhé*, the Name of the chief of which was *Maraitátá* (the burying place of men) and his father *Pahairedo* (the stealer of boats) names which did not a little confirm Tituboalos relation. These gentlemen however notwithstanding their terrible titles receivd us with all manner of civility, gave us provisions and after some delay sold us a very large hog for a hatchet. We saw among the crowd only two people whose faces we knew and not one bead or ornament which came out of our ship, tho there were several European ones; in one of the houses lay 2 12 pound shot one of which was markd with the English broad arrow, these they said had been given them by *Toottero* the Spanish commander. - We now walkd forward on foot till we came to the district which particularly belonged to *Waheatua*, it was
June 1769

Otahite

27. situate on the westernmost point of the large bay before mentiond, a large and most fertile flat. On it was a river so large that we were obligd to ferry over in a canoe and our Indian train to swim, which they did with as much facility as a pack of hounds taking the water much in the same manner. Here were no houses but ruind remains of very large ones. We proceeded along shore and found at last Waheatua setting near some pretty Canoe awnings which seemd to be intended to furnish him with lodgins, he was a thin old man with very white hair and beard; with him was a well looking woman of about 25 year old whose name was Toudidde, we had heard her name mentiond very often and by what the people told she was a woman of much consequence in this part of the Island, answering in some measure to what Oborea is in the other. From this place Tearre son to Waheatua acompanied us after having sold us a hog. The countrey we went through was more cultivated than any thing we have seen in the Island; the brooks were every where bankd into narrow channels with stone and the very sea was confind by a wall of stone also. The houses were not very large or very numerous but the large canoes which were hauld up every where along shore almost innumerable; they were of a different built from those which we have seen at Oboreonoo, longer and their heads and sterns higher. Upon these were kind of crotches which we suppos’d were to support large images many of which we saw hanging up in their houses; their awnings also were supported on pillars. At almost every point was a morai or burying place and many within land. They were
27. like those of Oboreonoo raised into the form of the roof of a house, but these were cleaner and better kept and also ornamented with many carvd boards set upright, on the tops of which were various figures of birds and men; on one particularly a figure of a cock painted red and yellow in imitation of the feathers of that bird. In some of them were figures of men standing on each others heads which they told me was the particular ornament of Burying grounds. - But fertile as this countrey was we did no[t] get or even see a single breadfruit, the trees were intirely bared, the people seemd to live intirely on Ahee Fagifera which were plentifull here.

After tiring ourselves with walking we calld up the boat but both our Indians were missing, they had it seems staid behind at Waheatuas, depending upon a promise we had made to the old man of returning and sleeping with him (a promise we were often forcd to make without any intention of performing it). Tearee and another went with us. We rowd till we came abreast a small Island calld Tuarrite when it became dark and our Indians piloted us ashore to a place where they said that we might sleep; it was a deserted house and near it was a very snug cove for the boat to lay, so we wanted nothing but Victuals of which article we had met with very little since morning. I went into the woods, it was quite dark so that neither people nor victuals could I find except one house where I was furnishd with fire, a breadfruit and a half and a few ahees, with which and a duck or 2 and a few curlews we
27. were forcd to go to sleep, which I did in the awning of a Canoe that followd us belonging to Tearee.

28. This morn at day break we rose and agreed to stay here an hour or two in hopes to get some provision: salt beef we had with us but nothing of the bread kind, for that we depended on the natives who had on all former occasions been both able and willing to supply us with any quantity of Breadfruit. I went out meaning to go among the houses; in my way I went through several burying grounds (Marai) on the pavements of which I saw several vertebrae and sculls of men laying about as if no care was taken to bury them, in every thing else they were quite like what we had seen before. In my excursion I could not procure the least supply of provision so we were forcd to set out in hopes of meeting some countrey where provision was less scarce. We walkd and the boat followd us. In about 3 miles we arrivd at a place where were several large canoes and a number of people with them; we were not a little surprizd to find that these people were our intimate acquaintance, several at least, who we had often seen at the tents and other places, Towia who we were told was brother to Towdidde, Roudero &c. Here we thought ourselves sure o getting a supply of provisions and apply’d to our friends accordingly. They told us we should have some if we would wait, we did till we were out of patience; we then desird them to get us some cocoa nuts the kernels of which make a substitute for bread, they said yes
28. but nobody went up the trees. We were resolvd to [have] them at least so calling for a hatchet we threatened to cut down the trees if our demands were not complied with; nobody objected to our doing so if we chose it, nor did any body atempt to climb the trees to supply us. Just now however we luckily saw two men busy in stripping a parcel of them, these we oblid to sell their stock consisting of 16, with these we embarkd taking with us *Tuahów* one of our Indians who had returnd to us last night long after dark. When we in the boat talkd over this behaviour of our freinds we were inclind to beleive that they were strangers here, and consequently had not the disposal of the provisions; indeed we never had before met with any difficulty in getting from them any provisions of which they had enough.

The reef here was irregular and the ground very foul so that the boat was continualy surroundd with breakers. We followd a canoe which led us to a passage where by waiting for a slatch of still water we got out, tho not without danger, for the sea broke quite across almost as soon as the boat was clear. We were now off the SW end of the Island. The land apeard very barren, no reef to shelter the coast and the hills every where butting out to the sea without any flatts; here were however some houses and inhabitants, and on ledges of the hills here and there a little breadfruit and higher up large quantities of *Faé*. This lasted for about a League when we again saw the reef and
28. a flat on which we went ashore by the recomendation of our Indian guide, who told us that the countrey was rich and good. The name of this district or whennua was *Ahowe*: the cheif *Mathiabo* soon came down to us, he seemd a total stranger both to us and our trade. His subjects brought down plenty of Cocoa nuts and about 20 breadfruits, which latter we bought at a very dear rate, while his majesty sold us a pig for a glass bottle preferring that to any thing we could give him. We saw here an English goose and a turkey cock which they told us had been left by the Dolphin, both of them immensely fat and as tame as possible, following the Indians every where who seemd immensely fond of them. In a long house in this neighbourhood I saw a sight quite new to me: 15 underjaw bones of men were fastned to a semicircular piece of board and hung up at one end of it, they appeard quite fresh, not one at all damagd even by the Loss of a tooth. I askd many questions about them but the people would not attend at all to me and either did not or would not understand either words or signs upon that subject. On our departure from hence *Mathiabo* desird leave to acompany us which was granted, he provd a good pilot but persuaded us to land often, 5 or 6 times in as many miles. In all these districts we saw nothing remarkable; the general face of the countrey was greener than on our side of the Island and the hills were coverd with wood almost down to the waters edge, the flats in general small but fertile enough. At last we
28. opend a large bay, which being opposite to as large a one on the other side almost intersects the Island at the place over which they drag their canoes; about 2 thirds down this bay we resolvd to lodge at a large house which we saw and which Mathiabo informd us belongd to a freind of his. From this place many Canoes came off to meet us and in them some very hansome women who by their behaviour seemd to be sent out to entice us to come ashore, which we most readily did, and were receivd in a very freindly manner by Wiverou who was cheif of the district which was calld Owiourou. He orderd his people to assist us in dressing our provisions, of which we had now got a tolerable stock about 30 breadfruit some plantains and fish, enough to last us two days. I stuck close to the women hoping to get a snug lodging by that means as I had often done; they were very kind, too much so for they promisd more than I ask’d, but when they saw that we were resolvd to stay they dropd off one by one and at last left me jilted 5 or 6 times and obligd to seek out for a lodging myself. Supper was by this time ready and we repaird to that part of the house where Wiverou was to eat it; he sent for his at the same time and Mathiabo supping with us we made a snug party. As soon as we had done we began to think of sleeping and askd for a bed. We were shown a part of the house where we might lay; we then sent for our cloaks and began to prepare ourselves, myself as my constant custom was by stripping myself and sending my cloaths into the boat, covering myself
only with a piece of Indian cloth after their fashion
which I have done ever ever since I had my Jacket &c. stolen at Atahourou. Mathiabo complain'd of cold
and a cloak was sent for for him also, Captn Cooke
and myself agreed that he had behaved so well to us
that there was not the least doubt of his honesty. We
laid down, Mathiabo did not come, I imagin'd that he
was gone to wash as the Indians always do in the
evening. I was almost asleep when an Indian who
was a stranger to me came and told me that he was
gone off with the Cloak, I did not believe him but laid
down again. Tuahow our Indian then came and
confirm'd the report; I then found it was high time to
give chase so I leap'd up and declard my case to the
company, shewing one of my pocket pistols which I
always kept with me. They took the alarm and began
to walk of, I seiz'd however the best looking man I
could see and told him that if he did not find out
where Mathiabo was I would shoot him in his stead.
The threat had the desired effect: he offer'd to
accompany me in the chase: the Captn myself and him
set out as hard as we could run and in about ten
minutes met a man bringing back the cloak; but our
freind Mathiabo was fled and by that means escap'd a
severe thrashing which we had decreed to be a proper
reward for his breach of trust. When we return'd every
body was gone from the house; we quickly however
made them sensible that our anger was intirely confind
to Mathiabo and they all return'd, Wiverou and his
wife taking up their lodging within 10 feet of us.

About 5 O’Clock our sentry awak'd us with the
alarming
29. intelligence of the boat being missing, he had he said seen her about 1/2 an hour before at her grapling which was about 50 yards from the shore, but that on hearing the noise of Oars he lookd out again and could see nothing of her. We started up and made all possible haste to the waterside, the morn was fine and starlight but no boat in sight. Our situation was now sufficiently disagreeable: the Indians had probably attackd her first and finding the people asleep easily carried her, in which case they would not fail to attack us very soon, who were 4 in number armd with one musquet and cartouch box and two pocket pistols without a spare ball or charge of powder for them. In about a quarter of an hour however we had the satisfaction to see the boat return, which had drove from her grapling by some effect of the tide probably as it was perfectly calm.

As soon as the boat returnd we got our breakfast and set out. The first district on which we landed was the last in Tiarrebbo, it was governd by Omóe. He was employd in building a house for which purpose he wanted a hatchet very much and was inclind to offer any price for it but our stock was quite spent; after some conversation we found that he would not deal for nails and put off the boat. He and his wife Whannooouda followd in a canoe; we took them into the boat and after rowing about a league they desird we would put ashore, which we did and found his people who had brought a very large hog. We had much chafering about the price of it, it was
29. worth any ax we had in the ship but we had no ax at all in the boat. We therefore told Omoe that if he would come to Matavie with his hog he should have a large ax and a nail into the bargain for his trouble; which he after having consulted his wife readily agreed to, and gave us a large piece of cloth as a pledge of his intention to perform this agreement.

At this place we saw a singular curiosity, a figure of a man made of Basket work, roughly but not ill designd; it was 7 feet high and two bulky in proportion to its hight; the whole was neatly coverd with feathers, white to represent skin and black to represent hair and **tattow**; on the head were three protuberances which we should have calld horns but the Indians calld them **tata ete**, little men. The image was calld by them *Maúwe*; they said it was the only one of the kind in Otahite and readily atempted to explain its use, but their language was totaly unintelligible and seemed to referr to some customs to which we are perfect strangers. - After this we got into the boat and rowd several miles before we went ashore. When we did we saw nothing remarkable but a burying ground whose pavement was unusually neat; it was ornamented by a pyramid about 5 feet high coverd intirely with the fruits of *Pandanus [tectorius]* and *Crataeva [gynandra]*. In the middle of all near the Pyramid was a small image of stone very roughly workd, the first instance of carving in stone I have seen among these people, and this they seemd to value
29. as it was coverd from the weather with a kind of shed built purposely over it; near it were three sculls of men laid in order, very white and clean and quite perfect. From hence we proceeded to Papárria, the district of our freinds Oama and Oborea, where we proposd to sleep tonight; we came there an hour before night and found that they were both from home, they were gone to Matavie to see us. This did not alter our resolution of sleeping here and we chose for that purpose the house of Oborea, which tho small was very neat and had nobody in it but her father who was very civil to us. After having setled our matters we took a walk towards a point on which we had from far observd trees of Etoa, Casuarina equisetifolia, from whence we judgd that thereabouts would be some marai; nor were we disapointed for we no sooner arrivd there than we were struck with the sight of a most enormous pile, certainly the masterpeice of Indian architecture in this Island so all the inhabitants allowd. Its size and workmanship almost exceeds beleif, I shall set it down exactly. Its form was like that of Marais in general, resembling the roof of a house, not smooth at the sides but formd into 11 steps, each of these 4 feet in hight making in all 44 feet, its lengh 267 its breadth 71. Every one of these steps were formd of one course of white coral stones most neatly squard and polishd, the rest were round pebbles, but these seemd to have been workd from their uniformity of size and roundness. Some of the coral stones were very large, one I measurd was
29. 3 1/2 by 2 1/2 feet. The foundation was of Rock stones likewise squared, one of these corner stone[s] measured 4ft:7in by 2ft:4in. The whole made a part of one side of a spacious area which was walled in with stone, the size of this which seemed to be intended for a square was 118 by 110 paces, which was entirely paved with flat paving stones. It is almost beyond belief that Indians could raise so large a structure without the assistance of Iron tools to shape their stones or mortar to join them, which last appears almost essential as the most of them are round; it is done tho, and almost as firmly as a European workman would have done it, tho in some things it seems to have failed. The steps for instance which range along its greatest length are not straight, they bend downward in the middle forming a small Segment of a circle: possibly the ground may have sunk a little under the greatest weight of such an immense pile, which if it happened regularly would have this effect. The labour of the work is prodigious: the quarry stones are but few but they must have been brought by hand from some distance at least, as we saw no signs of quarry near it tho I looked carefully about me; the coral must have been fished from under water, where indeed it is most plentiful but generally covered with 3 or 4 feet water at least and oftenest with much more. The labour of forming them when got must also have been at least as great as the getting them; they have not shown us any way by which they could square a stone but by means of another, which must be most tedious and liable to many accidents by the breaking
of tools. The stones are also polished and as well and truly as stones of the kind could be by the best workman in Europe, in that particular they excell owing to the great plenty of a sharp coral sand which is admirably adapted to that purpose and is found everywhere upon the seashore in this neighbourhood. About 100 yards to the west of this building was another court or pavd area in which were several ewhattas, a kind of altars raisd on wooden pillars about 7 feet high, on these they offer meat of all kinds to the gods; we have seen large Hogs offerd and here were the Sculls of above 50 of them besides those of dogs, which the preist who accompanied us assurd us were only a small part of what had been here sacrafisd. This marai and aparatus for sacrafice belongd we were told to Oborea and Oamo. The greatest pride of an inhabitant of Otahite is to have a grand Marai, in this particular our freinds far exceed any one in the Island, and in the Dolphins time the first of them exceeded every one else in riches and respect as much. The reason of the difference of her present apearance from that I found by an accident which I now relate: in going too and coming home from the Marai our road lay by the the sea side, and every where under our feet were numberless human bones cheifly ribbs and vertebrae. So singular a sight surprizd me much; I enquird the reason and was told that in the month calld by them Owiráhew last, which answers to our December 1768, the people of Tiarreboo made a descent here and killd a large number of people whose bones we now saw; that upon this Occasion Oborea and Oamo
29. were obligd to fly for shelter to the mountains, that the Conquerors burnt all the houses which were very large and took away all the hoggs &c., that the turkey and goose which we had seen with Mathiabo were part of the spoils, as were the jaw bones which we saw hung up in his house; they had been carried away as trophies and are usd by the Indians here in exactly the same manner as the North Americans do scalps.

30. After having slept last night without the least interuption we proceeded forwards but during the whole day saw little or nothing worth observation. We bought a little bread fruit which article has been equaly scarce all round the Island, more so even than it is at Matavie. At night we came to Atahourou, the very place at which we were on the 28th of May: here we were among our intimate freinds, who expressd the pleasure they had in entertaining us by giving us a good supper and good beds, in which we slept the better for being sure of reaching Matavie tomorrow night at the farthest. Here we learnd that the bread fruit (a little of which we saw just sprouting upon the trees) would not be fit to use in less than 3 months.

JULY 1769

1. Proceed homewards without meeting any thing new, the countrey we pass’d by and over being the same as we had gone over on the 28th of last month. The day turnd out rainy and bad, the only bad weather we have had since we left the ship, in which instance we are certainly fortunate as we had neither of us a change of Cloaths with us, so little did either of us expect to go round the Island when we set out from Matavie.
2. All our friends crowded this morn to see us and tell us that they were rejoiced at our return, nor were they empty handed, most of them brought something or other. The Canoes were still in the river: Captn Cooke finding that there was no likelihood now of any of the stolen goods being restor’d resolvd to let them go as soon as he could. His friend Potattow sollicited for one which was immediately granted? as it was imagin’d the favour was ask’d for some of his freinds, but no sooner did he begin to move the boat than the real owners and a number of Indians oppos’d him, telling him and his people very clamorously that it did not belong to them. He answer’d that he had bought it of the Captn and given a pig for it. The people were by this declaration satisfied and had we not luckily overheard it he would have taken away this and probably soon after have sollicited for more. On being detected he became so sulky and asham’d that for the rest of the day neither he or his wife would open their mouths or look straignt at any of us.

3. This morn very early Mr Monkhouse and myself set out, resolving to follow the course of the valley down which our river comes in order to see how far up it was inhabited &c. &c. When we had got about 2 miles up it we met several of our neighbours coming down with loads of breadfruit upon their backs. We had often wonder’d from whence the small supplys of breadfruit we had came, as there was none to be seen upon the flats, but they soon explain’d the mystery, shewing us breadfruit trees planted on the sides of the hills and
3. telling us at the same time that when the fruit in the flats faild this became ready for use, which had been by them planted upon the hills to preserve the succession. The quantity was they informd us much less than was in the low land and not sufficient by any means to supply all the interval of scarcity; when this was exhausted they must live upon ahee nuts, Plantains, and Vae, a wild plantain which grows very high up in the mountains. How the Dolphins who were here much about this time came to find so great plenty of Breadfruit upon the trees is to me a mystery, unless perhaps the seasons of this fruit alter; as for their having met with a much larger supply of hoggs fowls &c. than we have done I can most readily account for that, as we have found by constant experience that these peoole may be frightned into any thing. They have often describd to us the terrour which the Dolphins guns put them into and when we ask how many people were killd they number names upon their fingers, some ten some twenty some thirty, and then say worrow worrow the same word as is usd for a flock of birds or a shoal of fish: the Journals also serve to confirm this opinion. ‘When’ say they ‘towards the latter end of our time provisions were scarce a party of men were sent towards Eparre to get hoggs &c. an office which they had not the smallest difficulty in performing, for the people as they went along the shore drove out their hoggs to meet them and would not allow them to pay any thing for them.’
3. We proceeded about 4 miles farther and had houses pretty plentifully on each side the river, the valley being all this way 3 or 400 yards across. We were now shewn a house which we were told would be the last we should see, the master offered us Cocoa nutts and we refreshd ourselves. Beyond this we went maybe 6 miles (it is difficult to guess distances when roads are bad as this was, we being generally obliged to travel along the course of the river) we passd by several hollow places under stones where they told us that people who were benighted slept. At length we arrivd at a place where the river was bank’d on each side with steep rocks, and a caskade which fell from them made a pool so deep that the Indians said we could not go beyond it, they never did, their business lay upon the rocks on each side on the plains above which grew plenty of Vae. The avenues to these were truly dreadfull, the rocks were nearly perpendicular, one near 100 feet in height, the face of it constantly wet and slippery with the water of numberless springs; directly up the face even of this was a road, or rather a succession of long pieces of the bark of Hibiscus tiliaceus which servd them as a rope to take hold of and scramble up from ledge to ledge, tho upon those very ledges none but a goat or an Indian could have stood. One of these ropes was near 30 feet in length. Our guides offerd to help us up this pass but rather recomended one lower down a few hundred yards which was much less dangerous, tho we did not chuse to venture,
3. as the sight which was to reward our hazard was nothing but a grove of Vae trees which we had often seen before.

In the whole course of this walk the rocks were almost constantly bare to the view, so that I had a most excellent opportunity of searching for any appearance of minerals but saw not the smallest. The stones every where shewed manifest signs of having been at some time or other burn'd; indeed I have not seen a specimen of stone yet in the Island that has not the visible marks of fire upon it, small pieces indeed of the hatchet stone may be without them but I have pieces of the same species burn'd almost to a pumice, the very clay upon the hills gives manifest signs of fire. Possibly the Island owes its original to a volcano which now no longer burns; or Theoreticaly speaking, for the sake of those authors who balance this globe by a proper weight of continent placed near about these latitudes, that so necessary continent may have been sunk by Dreadfull earthquakes and Volcanos 2 or 300 fathoms under the sea, the tops of the highest mountains only still remain[ing] above water in the shape of Islands: an undoubted proof that such a thing now exists to the great emolument of their theory, which was it not for this proof would have been already totally demolishd by the Course our ship made from Cape Horn to this Island.

4. Very little company today. I employd myself in planting a large quantity of the seeds of Water melons, Oranges, Lemons, limes &c. which I had brought from Rio de Janeiro; they were planted on both sides of the fort in as many varieties of soil as I could chuse.
4. I have very little Doubt of the former especialy coming to perfection as I have given away large quantities among the natives and planted also in the woods; they now continualy ask me for seeds and have already shewd me melon plants of their raising which look perfectly well. The seeds that Captn Cooke sewd have provd so bad that no one has come up except mustard, even the Cucumbers and melons have faild, owing probably to the method of their being packd which was in small bottles seald down with rosin.

5. This morn I saw the operation of Tattowing the buttocks performd upon a girl of about 12 years old, it provd as I have always suspected a most painfull one. It was done with a large instrument about 2 inches long containing about 30 teeth, every stroke of this hundreds of which were made in a minute drew blood. The patient bore this for about 1/4 of an hour with most stoical resolution; by that time however the pain began to operate too stron[g]ly to be peacably endurd, she began to complain and soon burst out into loud lamentations and would fain have persuaded the operator to cease; she was however held down by two women who sometimes scolded, sometimes beat, and at others coaxd her. I was setting in the adjacent house with Tomio for an hour, all which time it lasted and was not finishd when I went away tho very near. This was one side only of her buttocks for the other had been done some time before. The arches upon the loins upon which they value themselves much were not yet done, the doing of which they told causd more pain than what I had seen. About dinner time many of our freinds came, Oamo, Otheothea, Tuarua &c.
6. We begin now to prepare in earnest for our departure, the sails were today carried on board and bent, the guns also were taken on board. Our freinds begin now to beleive that we are realy preparing for our departure, a circumstance which they have of late much doubted. This evening we had a second visit from Teareederry and Toimata, the people again paying them the same respect as on the 21st of June: poor Toimata was again baulkd in her desire of seeing the fort, Oamo insisting that she should not come in. Soon after these had left us some of our freinds came to inform us that Monaamia the man who stole the Quadrant was landed and meant this night to make an atempt upon us; all were ready to assist us and several, Tuanne Matte especialy, very desirous of sleeping in the Fort, which probably was the reason why this arch theif did not this night exercise his abilities.

7. The carpenters were this morn employd in taking down the gates and palisades of our little fortification to make us firewood for the ship, when one of the Indians without made shift to steal the staple and hook of the great gate. We were immediately app[r]ised of the theft to the great affright of our visiters of whoom the bell tent was full; their fears were however presently quieted and I (as usual) set out on my ordinary occupation of theif catching. The Indians most readily joind me and away we set full cry much like a pack of fox hounds, we ran and walkd and walkd and ran for I beleive 6 miles with as little delay as possible, when
7. we learnt that we had very early in the chase passd our game who was washing in a brook, saw us a coming and hid himself in the rushes. We returnd to the place and by some intelligence which some of our people had got found a scraper which had been stole from the ship and was hid in those very rushes; with this we returnd and soon after our return Tubourai brought the staple.

8. Our freinds with us as usual, the fort more and more dismantled. Our freinds seem resolvd to stay till we got tho the greatest part of them are absolutely without victuals; we have been for some days obligd to spare them every little assistance that we can and the best of them are most thankfull for a single basket of apples. Notwithstanding this we had 4 small pigs brought today from Oborea and Polotheara.

9. Our freinds with us early in the morning as usual, some I beleive realy sorry at the aproach of our departu[r]e others desirous to make as much as they can of our stay. Several of the people were this evening out on liberty. Two foreign seamen were together and one had his knife stolen; he atempted to recover it, may be roughly, for the Indians attackd him and wounded him greivously with a stone over his eye, the other was also slightly wounded in the head; the people who had done this immediately fled to the mountains. - Two of our marines left the fort some time last night or
9. this morn without leave. Their doing this at a time when our departure is so near makes us suspect them of an intention of staying among these people; nothing however has been said about them today in hopes of their returning which they have not yet done.

10. We are told by the Indians this morn that our people do not intend to return; they are they say gone up into the mountains where our people cannot get at them and one is already married and become an inhabitant of Otahite. After some deliberation however Tuanne matte and Patea undertook to carry our people to the place where they were; they were known to have no arms so two were thought sufficient for the service, a midshipman and a marine, who set off without loss of time. We were now quite ready for the sea so no time was to be lost in recovering the deserters. The Indians gave us but little hopes of our people bringing them back: one certain method remaind however in our power, the seizing of some of their principal people and detaining them, which was immediately resolvd upon. Oborea, Potattow, Polotheara, Tubourai, Tamio, Tuarua, Otheothea and Tetuahitea and Nuna were in the fort and were told that they would not be permitted to go from it till our people returnd. At first they were not at all alarmd, they hardly beleivd us in earnest till they saw the Pinnace come ashore and soon after go away to the westward, the[y] immediately suspected what was the case, that she was gone to fetch Dootahah. They were now alarmd but depending on our having usd them well on all occasions shewd but
10. little signs of either discontent or fear, but assurd us that the people should be brought back as soon as possible. In the evening Dootahah was brought on board, Lieutenant Hickes who had been sent on the service found him at Tettahah and easily took him or rather stole him from the people. Night came on, it was thought unsafe to let the prisoners remain in the fort, which was totaly dismantled; Oborea, Potattow and Tubourai were orderd to the ship; in going into the boat they expresse[d] much fear and shed many tears. The Captn staid on board with them, I slept ashore and the rest of the prisoners in my tent. About 8 our Indians came back with the two deserters but brought the disagreeable news of one of the people who had been sent after them being seizd by the Indians, who declar’d that they would not release them till Dootahah had his liberty. The news was sent aboard and a boat came off immediately for Nuna and Tuanne matte. They were sent to the ship, a boat armd went immediately in search of the people and in her the latter and Tupia who was our voluntary prisoner.

11. The night was spent tolerably well, the women cryd a little at first but were soon quieted by assurances that at all events they should not be hurt. At day break a large number of people gatherd about the fort many of them with weapons; we were intirely without defences so I made the best I could of it by going out among them. They wer[e] very civil and shewd much fear as they have done of me upon all occasions, probably because I never shewd the least of them but have upon all our quarrels
11. gone immediately into the thickest of them. They told me that our people would soon return. Accordingly about 8 they did safe and sound, we saw them through our glasses go up the side and immediately dischargd our prisoners, making each such a present as we though[t] would please them with which some were well content. The prisoners from the ship were by this time coming ashore. They were receivd with much joy by the multitude; I met them from the boat but no sign of forgiveness could I see in their faces, they lookd sulky and affronted. I walkd with Oborea along the beach: 4 hoggs were soon offerd me, two from her and as many from Dootahah, I refusd them however positively unless they would sell them which they refusd to do. The rest of the morning was employd in getting the tents aboard, which was done by dinner time and we dind on board. The small bower had been got up and the stock found to be so much worm eaten that we are obligd to make a new one, and as we have no hopes of the best bower being in better repair it is probable that we shall not get to sea this day or two.

12. This morn Tupia came on board, he had renewd his resolves of going with us to England, a circumstance which gives me much satisfaction. He is certainly a most proper man, well born, cheif Tahowa or preist of this Island, consequently skilld in the mysteries of their religion; but what makes him more than any thing else desireable is his experience in the navigation of these people and knowledge of the Islands in these seas; he has told us the names of above 70, the most of which he has himself been at. The Captn refuses to take him on his own account,
12. in my opinion sensibly enough, the governent will never in all human probability take any notice of him; I therefore have resolvd to take him. Thank heaven I have a sufficiency and I do not know why I may not keep him as a curiosity, as well as some of my neighbours do lions and tygers at a larger expence than he will probably ever put me to; the amusement I shall have in his future conversation and the benefit he will be of to this ship, as well as what he may be if another should be sent into these seas, will I think fully repay me. As soon as he had made his mind known he said that he would go ashore and return in the evening, when he would make a signal for a boat to be sent off for him; he took with him a miniature picture of mine to shew his freinds and several little things to give them as parting presents. After dinner we went ashore to the Marai no Dootahah of which I was desirous to have a drawing made and had not yet done it. We no sooner landed than several of our freinds, those who were not totaly afronted at the imprisonmment of the day before yesterday, came to meet us; we proceeded with them to Dootahahs house where was Oborea &c. They were glad to see us and a perfect reconciliation ensued, in consequence of which they promisd to visit us tomorrow morning to take their leave of us, as we told them that we should sail before noon. With them was Tupia who most willingly returnd in the boat with us aboard the ship where he took up his lodgins for the first time.
13. About 10 this morn saild From Otahite leaving our freinds Some of them at least I realy beleive personaly sorry for our departure, notwithstanding the confinement of the day before yesterday had frigh[t]ned and affronted them as much as possible, yet our nearest freinds came on board at this Critical time except only Tubourai and Tamio. We had Oborea, Otheothea, Tayoa, Nuna, Tuanna Matte, Potattou, Polotheara &c. on board when the anchor was weighd; they took their leaves tenderly enough, not without plenty of tears tho intirely without that clamourous weeping made use of by the other Indians, several boats of whom were about the ship shouting out their lamentations, as vyeing with each other not who should cry most but who should cry loudest - a custom we had often condemned in conversation with our particular freinds as savouring more of affected than real greif.

Tupia who after all his struggles stood firm at last in his resolution of accompanying us parted with a few heartfelt tears, so I judge them to have been by the Efforts I saw him make use of to hide them. He sent by Otheothea his last present, a shirt to Potamai, Dootahah’s favourite mistress. He and I went then to the topmast head where we stood a long time waving to the Canoes as they went off, after which he came down and shewd no farther signs of seriousness or concern.

In the Evening Tethuroa in sight; before night it appears clearly to be a very low Island and but small, which with Tupias declaring that
13. there were no fixd inhabitants upon it only the people of Otahite who went there for a few days to fish, determind us to content ourselves with what we had seen and stand on in search of Urietea, which he describd to be a well peopled Island as large as Otahite.

14. Before Noon today two Islands are in sight which Tupia calls Huahine and Ulhietea, both of them make high and large.

15. Calm all last night, this morn hazey so that no land is seen; light breezes and calms succeeding each other all morn. Our Indian often prayd to Tane for a wind and as often boasted to me of the success of his prayers, which I plainly saw he never began till he saw a breeze so near the ship that it generaly reachd her before his prayer was finishd. At sunset a pleasant breeze. Owahine and Ulhietea very plainly seen.

16. This morn we were very near the Island; some Canoes very soon came off but appeard very much frightned, one however came to us bringing a cheif and his wife, who on Tupia’s assurances of Freindship from us came on board. They were like the Otahite people in Language, dress, tattow, in short in Every thing. Tupia has always said that the people of this Island and Urietea will not steal, in which they indeed differ much from our late freinds if they only keep up to their Character.

Soon after dinner we came to an anchor in a very fine bay calld by the natives Owalla and immediately went ashore.
16. As soon as we landed Tupia squatted down on the ground and ranging us on one side and the Indians on the other began to pray, our chief who stood opposite to him answering him in kind of responses. This lasted about a quarter of an hour in which time he sent at different intervals two handkerchiefs and some beads he had prepared for the purpose as presents to Eautua; these were sent among many messages which pass’d backwards and forwards with plantains, malapoides &c. In return for this present to the gods which it seems was very acceptable we had a hog given for our Eautua, which in this case will certainly be our bellies.

17. Went ashore this morn and walk’d up the hills; found the productions here almost exactly similar to those of Otahite; upon the hills the rocks and clay were burnt if any thing more than they were in that Island. The people also were almost exactly like our late [friends] but rather more stupid and lazy, in proof of which I need only say that we should have gone much higher up the hills than we did if we could have persuaded them to accompany us, whose only excuse was the fear of being kill’d by the fatigue. Their houses are very neat and their boathouses particularly very large, one of those I measured 50 long paces in length 10 broad and 24 ft high: the Gothic arch of which it consisted was supported on one side by 26, on the other by 30 pillars or rather clumsy thick posts of about
17. 2 ft high and one thick. Most of these were carved with heads of men, boys or other devices, as the rough fancy and more rough workmanship of these stone hatchet furnishd gentrey suggested and executed. The flats were filld with very fine breadfruit trees and an infinite number of Cocoa nuts, upon which latter the inhabitants seemd to depend much more than those of Otahite; we saw however large spaces occupied by lagoons and salt swamps upon which neither breadfruit nor Cocoa nuts would thrive.

18. This morning went to take a farther view of a building which we had seen yesterday and admird a good deal, taking with us Tupias boy Tayeto for himself was too much engagd with his freinds to have time to accompany us. The boy told us that it was calld Ewharre no Eatua or the house of the god but could not explain at all the use of it. It consisted of a chest whose lid was nicely sewd on and thatched over very neatly with palm nut leaves, the whole was fixd upon two poles by little arches of carvd wood very neat; these poles seemd to be usd in carrying it from place to place tho when we saw it it was supported upon two posts. One end of the chest was open with a round hole within a square one, this was yesterday stopd up
18. with a piece of cloth which least I should offend the people I left untouchd, but to day the cloth and probably the contents of the chest were removd as there was nothing at all in it.

Trade today does not go on with any spirit, the people when any thing is offerd will not take it on their own judgement, but take the opinion of 20 or 30 people about them which takes up much time; we however got 11 piggs.

19. This morn trade rather better: got 3 very large hogs and some piggs by producing hatchets, which had not been before given and we hop’d to have had no occasion for in an Island which had not before been seen by Europaeans. In the afternoon go to Sea.

The Island of Huahine differs scarce at all from that of Otahite either in its productions or in the customs of the people. In all our searches here we have not found above 10 or 12 new plants, a few insects indeed and a species of scorpions which we did not see at Otahite. This Island seems however this year at least to be a month forwarder than the other, as the ripeness of the Cocoa nuts now full of kernel and the new breadfruit, some of which is fitt to Eat, fully evinces. Of the Cocoa nut kernels they make a food which they call Poe by scraping them fine and mixing them with yams also scrapd; these are put into a wooden trough and hot stones laid among them, by which means
19. a kind of Oily hasty pudding is made which our people relishd very well especially fryd.

The men here are large made and stout, one we measurd was 6ft 3 high and well made; the women very Fair, more so than at Otahite tho we saw none so hansom. Both Sexes seem’d to be less timid as well as less curious, the firing of a gun frightned them but they did not fall down as our Otahite freinds at first generaly did. On one of their people being taken in the fact of stealing and seizd upon by the hair they did not run away, but coming round inquird into the cause and seemingly at least approving of the Justice recomended a beating for the offender which was immediately put in practise.

When they first came on board the ship they seemd struck with a sight so new and wonderd at every thing that was shewn to them, but did not seem to search and inquire for matters of curiosity even so much as the Otahite people did, tho they had before seen almost every thing we had to shew them.

20. At noon today come to an anchor at Ulhietea in a bay Calld by the natives Oapoa, the entrance of which is very near a small Islet Calld Owhattera. Some Indians soon came on board expressing signs of fear, they were two Canoes each of which brought a woman, I suppose as a mark of confidence,
20. and a pig as a present. To each of these ladies was given a spike nail and some beads with which they seemd much pleasd. Tupia who has always expressd much fear of the men of Bola Bola says that they have conquerd this Island and will tomorrow come down and fight with us, we therefore lose no time in going ashore as we are to have today to ourselves. On landing Tupia repeated the ceremony of praying as at Huahine after which an English Jack was set up on shore and Captn Cooke took possession of this and the other three Islands in sight viz. Huahine Otahah and Bola Bola for the use of his Britannick majesty. After this we walk together to a great Marai calld Tapodeboatea whatever that may signifie; it is different from those of Otahite being no more than walls about 8 feet high of Coral Stones (some of an immense size) filld up with smaller ones, the whole ornamented with many planks set upon their ends and carvd their whole lengh. In the neighbourhood of this we found the altar or ewhatta upon which lay the last sacrifice, a hog of about 80 pounds weight which had been put up there whole and very nicely roasted. Here were also 4 or 5 Ewharre no Eatua
20. or god houses which were made to be carried on
poles. One of these I examind by putting my hand
into it: within was a parcel about 5 feet long and one
thick wrappd up in mats, these I tore with my fingers
till I came to a covering of mat made of platted Cocoa
nut fibres which it was impossible to get through so I
was obligd to desist, especialy as what I had already
done gave much offence to our new freinds. From
hence we went to an adjoining long house where
among several things such as rolls of cloth &c. was
standing a model of a Canoe about 3 feet long upon
which were tied 8 under jaw bones of men. Tupia told
us that it was the custom of these Islanders to cut off
the Jaw bones of those who they had killd in war;
these were he said the jaw bones of Ulhietea people
but how they came here or why tied thus to a canoe
we could not understand, we were therefore contented
to conjecture that they were plac’d there as a trophy
won back from the men of Bola Bola their mortal
enemies. Night now came on apace but Dr Solander
and myself walkd along shore a little way and saw an
Ewharre no Eatu, the under part of which was lind
with a row of Jaw bones which we were also told
were those of Ulhietea
20. men. We saw also Cocoa nut trees the stemms of which were hung round with nutts so that no part of them could be seen, these we were told were put there that they might dry a little and be prepard for making poe; we saw also a tree of Ficus prolixa in great perfection, the trunck or rather congeries of roots of which was 42 paces in circumference.

21. Dr Solander and myself walkd out this morn and saw many large Boathouses like that describd at Huahine page 303 and 401. On these the inhabitants were at work making and repairing the large Canoes calld by them Pahee, at which business they workd with incredible cleverness tho their tools certainly were as bad as possible. I will first give the dimensions and description of one of their boats and then their method of building. Its extreme lenght from stem to stern not reckoning the bending up of both those parts 51 feet; breadth in the clear at the top forward 14 inches, midships 18, aft 15; in the bilge forward 32 inches, midships 35, aft 33; depth midships 3 ft 4; hight from the ground she stood on 3ft 6; her head raisd without the figure 4ft 4 from the ground, the figure 11 inches; her stern 8 ft 9, the figure 2 feet. Alongside of her was lashd another like her in all parts but less in proportion being only 33 feet in her extreme lengh. The form of these Canoes is better to be expressd
21. by a drawing than by any description. This annexd may serve to give some Idea of a section: *aa* is the first seam, *bb* the second, *cc* the third. The first stage or keel under *aa* is made of trees hollowd out like a trough for which purpose they chuse the longest trees they can get, so that 2 or three make the bottom of their largest boats (some of which are much larger than that describd here as I make a rule to describe every thing of this kind from the common size); the next stage under *bb* is formd of streght plank about 4 feet long and 15 inches broad and 2 inches thick; the next stage under *cc* is made like the bottom of trunks of trees hollowd into its bilging form; the last or that above *cc* is formd also out of trunks of trees so that the moulding is of one peice with the plank. This work dificult as it would be to an Europaean with his Iron tools they perform without Iron and with amazing dexterity; they hollow with their stone axes as fast at least as our Carpenters could do and dubb tho slowly with prodigious nicety; I have seen them take off a skin of an angular plank without missing a stroke, the skin itself scarce 1/16 part of an inch in thickness. Boring the holes throug[h] which their sewing is to pass seems to be their greatest difficulty. Their tools are
21. made of the bones of men, generally the thin bone of the upper arm; these they grind very sharp and fix to a handle of wood, making the instrument serve the purpose of a gouge by striking it with a mallet made of a hard black wood, and with them would do as much work as with Iron tools was it not that the brittle Edge of the tool is very liable to be broke.

When they have prepared their planks &c. the keel is layd on blocks and the whole Canoe put together much in the same manner as we do a ship, the sides being supported by stantions and all the seams wedg’d together before the last sewing is put on, so that they become tolerably tight considering that they are without calking.

With these boats they venture themselves out of sight of land; we saw several of them at Otahite which had come from Ulhietea and Tupia has told us that they go voyages of twenty days, whether true or false I do not affirm. They keep them very carefully under such boathouses as are describd p. , one of which we measured today 60 yards by 11.

22. Weather worse than yesterday, in the course of last night it blew very fresh, this morn rainy. Walk out but meet little worth observation. Saw a double pahie such as that describd yesterday but much larger, she had upon her an awning supported
22. by pillars which held the floor of it 4 feet at least above the deck or upper surface of the boat; also a trough for making *Poe poe* or sour paste carvd out of hard black stone such as their hatchets are made of, it was 2 ft 7 long and 1 ft 4 broad, very thick and substantial and supported by 4 short feet, the whole neatly finishd and perfectly polishd tho quite without ornaments. Today as well as yesterday every one of us who walkd out saw many Jaw bones fix’d up in houses as well as out of doors, a confirmation of their taking them instead of scalps.

23. Weather mended a little. Dr Solander and myself go upon the hills in hopes of finding new plants but ill rewarded; return home at night having seen nothing worth mentioning.

24. Foul wind. The Captn attempts to go out of the reef at another passage situate between the two Islets of *Opourourou* and *Taumou*. The ship turning to windward within the reef in doing which she narrowly escapes going ashore, the Quartermaster in the chains calld out 2 fathom; the ship drawing at least 14 feet made it impossible that such a shoal could be under her Keel, so either the man was mistaken or she went along the edge of a coral rock many of which are here as steep as a wall.
24. Soon after this we came to an anchor and I went ashore but saw nothing but a small *marai* ornamented with 2 sticks about 5 feet long, each hung with Jaw bones as thick as possible and one having a skull stuck on its top.

25. This morn get to sea and turn to windward all day. Find that the two Islands Ulhietea and Otahah are inclosed by one reef: Tupia says that there is a large pasage through[h] it between them and a harbour within it, also another fronting a large bay on the Eastermost end of Otahah.

26. Foul wind Continues last night, the ship has faln much to leward. Before night however we have gaind our loss and something more, as we discover a low Island ahead which Tupia tells us is calld by the natives *Tupi*; he says that it is low without a harbour and yields nothing but Cocoa nuts and fish.

27. Turn to leward all night and all day again, so much that at night Tupi is not in sight.

28. Wind still baffles us as much as ever. This morn hoisted out a boat and sent ashore on the Island of Otahah in which Dr Solander and myself took a passage. We went through a large breach in the reef situate between two Islands calld Toahattu and Whennuaia within which we found very spatious harbours, particularly in one bay which was at least 3 miles deep.
28. The inhabitants as usual so that long before night we had purchased 3 hoggs, 21 fowls and as many yams and plantains as the boat would hold. Indeed of these last we might have had any quantity and a more useful refreshment they are to us in my opinion even than the pork; they have been for this week past boil'd and serv'd instead of bread; every man in the ship is fond of them and with us in the Cabbin they agree much better than the Bread fruit did which sometimes grip'd us. But what makes any refreshments of this kind the more acceptable is that our bread is at present so full of vermin that notwithstanding all possible care I have sometimes had 20 at a time in my mouth, every one of which tasted as hot as mustard.

The Island itself seem'd more barren than Ulhietea tho much like it in produce, bread fruit being less plentyfull than Plantains and Cocoa nuts. The people perfectly the same, so much so that I did not observe one new custom or any thing Else among them worth mention; they were not very numerous but flock'd from all Quarters to the boat wherever she went bringing with them whatever they had to sell. Here as well as in the rest of the Islands they paid us the same Compliment they are used to pay to their own Kings, uncovering their shoulders
28. and lapping their Garments round their breasts; here particularly they were so scrupulously observant of it that a man was sent with us who called out to every one we met telling him what we were and what he was to do.

29. The wind last night has favourd us a little so that we are this morn close under the Island of Bola Bola, whose high craggy peak seems on this side at least totally inaccessible to men; round it is a large quantity of low land which seems very barren. Tupia tells us that between the shore and the mountain is a large salt lagoon, a certain sign of barrenness in this climate; he however tells us that there are upon the Island plenty of Hogs and fowls as well as the vegetables we have generally met with.

We see but few people on the shore, Tupia tells us that they are gone to Ulhietea where we shall find them. He says also that there is no breach in the reef on this side the Island but on the other there is one large enough for the ship to go in and a good harbour within it.

30. This morn wind right on end. See a new Island called by Tupia Maurua, he says it is fertile and yeilds plentifully all kinds of provision, but that there is no breach in the reef large enough for the ship to go into.
July 1769

31. Still turning to windward with the wind right in our teeth, towards evening however it mends and gives us hopes that we may tomorrow morn come to an anchor in Ulhietea. Tupia today shewes us a large breach in the reef of Otahah through which the ship might conveniently pass into a large bay, where he says there is good anchorage. We have now a very good opinion of Tupias pilotage, especialy since we observd him at Huahine send a man to dive down to the heel of the ships rudder; this the man did several times and reported to him the depth of water the ship drew, after which he has never sufferd her to go in less than 5 fathom water without being much alarmd.

AUGUST 1769

1. The wind right off the land of Ulhietea mak[in]g it difficult to get in tho we see a good inlet; after turning to windward till afternoon we however at last get hold of anchorage in the mouth of it. Many canoes came immediately about the ship bringing all sorts of trade so that before night we have purchas’d several piggs and fowls and a large quantity of Plantains and Cocoa nutts.

On attempting to warp the ship in this even the anchor was found to be fast in a rock; at least no attempts could stir it till night when the tide (which runs strong through the inlet) turnd, the ship then going over the anchor tripd it herself.
2. Dr Solander and myself have spent this day ashore and been very agreeably entertain'd by the reception we have met with from the people, tho we were not fortunate enough to meet with one new plant. Everybody seemd to fear and respect us but nobody to mistrust us in the smallest degree, men women and children came crouding after us but no one shewd us the least incivility, on the contrary wherever there was dirt or water to pass over they strove who should carry us on their backs. When we came to the houses of the principal people we were receivd with a form quite new to us. The people who generaly followd us rushd into them before us leaving however a lane sufficiently wide for us to pass; when we came in we found them rangd on each side a long mat spread upon the ground, at the farther end of which sat one or more very young women or children neatly dressd, who without stirring expected us to come up to them and make them presents, which we did with no small pleasure for prettier children or better dressd we had no where seen. One of these *Tettuas* as they were calld was about 6 years old, her ahou or gown was red and round her head was wound a large quantity of *Tamou* (plaited hair) an ornament they value more than any thing they have. She sat at the farther end of a mat 30 feet long on which no one of the spectators presumd to set a foot notwistanding the crowd, leaning upon the arm of a well looking well dressd woman about 30, possibly her nurse.
2. We walked up to her, as soon as we approached she stretchd out her hand to receive the beads we were to give, but had she been a princess royal of England giving her hand to be kissd no instruction could have taught her to have done it with a better grace. So much is untaught nature superior to art that I have seen no sight of the kind that has struck me half so much.

Gratefull possibly for the presents we had made to these girls the people in our return tryd every method to Oblige us; particularly in one house the master orderd one of his people to dance for our amusement which he did thus:

He put upon his head a large cylindrical basket about 4 feet long and 8 inches in diameter, on the front of which was fastned a facing of feathers bending forwards at the top and edged round with sharks teeth and the tail feathers of tropick birds: with this on he dancd moving slowly and often turning his head round, sometimes swiftly throwing the end of his headdress or whow so near the faces of the spectators as to make them start back, which was a joke that seldom faild of making every body laugh especialy if it happened to one of us.

We had also an opportunity of seeing the inside of the Ewharre no eatua so often mentiond. There were 3 of them much ornamented with jaw bones and very full of bundles lapd up with
2. their cloth; these the people opned with some perswasion and in them we found complete skulls with their lower jaw bones in their proper places. Perhaps these were the skulls of those of the victorious party who died in battle and the jaw bones fastnd on the outside were those of the conquerd, but for this conjecture I had no authority from the Indians who seemd to avoid as much as possible any questions upon the subject.

3. This day went along shore in the opposite direction to that we took yesterday, intending to spend most of our time in purchasing stock, which we have always found the people readyer to part with at their houses and selling cheaper than at the market. In the course of our walk we met a set of stroling dancers Calld by the Indians Heiva who detaind us 2 hours and during all that time entertaind us highly indeed. They consisted of 3 drums, 2 women dancers and 6 men; these Tupia tells us go round the Island as we have seen the little Heivas do at Otahite, but differ from those in that most of the people here are principal people, of which assertion we had in the case of one of the women an undoubted proof.

I shall first describe their dresses and then their dances. The women had on their heads a quantity of tamou or plaited hair which was rolled and between the interstices of it flowers of Gardenia were stuck making a head dress truly Elegant. Their shoulders arms and breasts as low as their arms were bare, below this they were coverd with black cloth and under each shoulder was placd a bunch of black feathers much as our ladies
3. nosegays or Bouquets. On their hips rested a quantity of cloth pleated very full which reached almost up to their arms and fell down below into long peticoats reaching below their feet, which they managed with as much dexterity as our opera dancers could have done; these pleats were brown and white alternately but the peticoats were all white.

In this dress they advanced sideways keeping excellent time to the drums which beat brisk and loud; they soon began to shake their hips giving the folds of cloth that lay upon them a very quick motion which was continued during the whole dance, they sometimes standing, sometimes sitting and sometimes resting on their knees and elbows and generally moving their fingers with a quickness scarce to be imagining. The chief entertainment of the spectators seemed however to arise from the lascivious motions they often made use of which were highly so, more indeed than I shall attempt to describe.

One of these girls had in her ear 3 pearls, one of them very large but so foul that it was worth scarce any thing, the other two were as large as a middling pea and of a good and clear water as well as shape. For these I offered at different times any price the owner would have but she would not hear of parting with them; I offered once the price of 4 hogs down and any thing she would ask beside, but she would not hear of it. Indeed they have always set a value upon their pearls, if tolerably good, almost equal to our valuation supposing them as they always are spoilt by the drilling.

Between the dances of the women (for they
3. sometimes rested) the men acted a kind of interlude in which they spoke as well as dancd. We were not however sufficiently vers’d in their language to be able to give an account of the Drama.

4. We had often heard Tubia speak of Lands belonging to him which had been taken away by the Bola Bola men: these he tells us now are situate in the very bay where the ship lies. On going ashore this morning the inhabitants confirmd What he has told us and shewd us several different whennuas which they all acknowledged belong of right to him. The largest number of the people here are it seems the so much feard Bola Bola men, and we are told that tomorrow Opoony the King of that Island will come to visit us. We are much inclind to receive him civily as we have met with so civil a reception from his subjects.

Dr Solander and myself go upon the hills accompanied by several Indians, who carried us by excellent paths so high that we plainly saw the other side of the Island and the passage through which the ship went out of the reef between the Islets of Opoorooroo and Tamou. Our walk did not turn out very profitable as we found only two plants that we had not seen before.

In coming down again we saw the game that the Indians call Erowhaw, which is no more than pitching a kind of light lances headed with hard wood at a mark: of this amusement they seem to be very fond but none that we saw now excelld in doing it, not above one in 12
4. striking the mark which was the bole of a plantain tree about 20 yards distant.

5. Went in the boat to the Southward with the Captn &c. Saw two inlets in the reef and good harbours within them; they were both situate close to Islets, one having one on each side of it (indeed in general I have seen Breaches in Reefs almost wherever there are Islands upon them. The people all along shore were very poor, so much so that after all our days work we did not procure either hog or fowl nor indeed did we see either.

6. Yesterday Opoony the King of Bola Bola sent his Compts and a present of hogs and Fowls to the King of the ship, sending word also that he would in person wait upon him today. We therefore all hands staid at home in hopes of the honour of his excellencys visit. We were disapointed in our expectations not disagreably for instead of his majesty came 3 hansome lively girls who staid with us the morning and took off all regret for the want of his majesties company.

In the evening we all went to see the great king and thank him for his civilities particularly of this morning. The King of the Tatatoas or Club men who have conquerd this and are the terror of all other Islands we expected to see young lively hansome &c. &c. but how were we disapointed when we were led to an old decrepid half blind man who seemd to have scarce reason enough left to send hogs, much less galantry enough to send ladies.

7. We learnt from Opoony yesterday that his cheif residence
7. was at Otahah, to this place he proposd to acompany us. As today Captn Cooke and Dr Solander went upon the expedition myself staid at home. They proceeded with Opoony and all his train, many Canoes, to a bay in Otahah calld Obooto-booto, his majesties cheif residence; here the houses were very large and good and the Canoes also finer than any the gentlemen had before seen. Such a prelude made them expect much from the owners of so fine houses, a boat load of hogs was the least they thought of, especialy as they had plenty of Spartan money to pay for them; but alas, the Gentlemen who had fatigued themselves with building the houses, chose to refresh themselves with eating the hogs; so that after the whole day was spent a small number only were procurd in proportion to what were expected.

Myself staid at home this morning and traded for some provisions and curiosities; in the afternoon took Mr Parkinson to the Heiva that he might scetch the dresses. The dancing was exactly the same as I had seen it before except that another woman was added to the two I saw before. The interludes of the men were varied, they gave us 5 or 6 which resembled much the Drama of an English stage dance. Most of my Freinds were constan[t]ly at the Heiva. Their names I set down and relationships as they are cheifly one family (1) Tiarrre no Horoa a King or cheif; (2) Whannooutoora wife to 1; (3) Otoobooi sister to 2; (4) Orai Elder brother to 2; (5) Tettuanue younger brother to 2; (6) Otehammena dancing girl; (7) Ouratooa Do; (8) Mattehea father to 1; (9) Opipi mother to 1.

8. Dr Solander and self went along shore to gather plants, buy hogs or any thing else that might occurr. We took
8. our course towards the Heiva and at last came up to it; it has gradually moved from very near us till now it is 2 Leagues off, Tupia tells us that it will in this manner move gradually round the Island. Our Freinds receivd us as usual with all manner of civility, dancing and giving us after the amusement a very good dinner as well as offering us a quantity of their Cloth by way of present, which we should have accepted had we not been full stocked with it before. We now understood a little more of the interludes than we had formerly done. I shall describe one as well as I can. The men dancers were divided into two parties differing in the colour of their clothes, one brown the other white. The cheif of the brown ones gave a basket of meat to the rest his servants that they might take care of it; the white represented theives who atempted to steal it several times, dancing all the time. Several different expedients they make use of without success till at last they found the watchmen asleep; they then gently went up to them and lifting them off from the basket, which for security sake they had placd in the middle of them, they went off with their prize. The others woke and danced but seem’d to shew little regret for their loss or indeed hardly to miss the basket at all.

9. This morn spent in trading with the Canoes for whatever they would bring, resolving to sail as soon as they left off to bring provision, which about noon they did and we again Launchd out into the Ocean in search of what chance and Tupia might direct us to.
10. Myself sick all day.

11. Tupia talks of an Island which he calls *Mannúa*, he says that we shall see it tomorrow morning but points out its place upon our weather bow so we shall probably go to leward of it.

12. Get rid of sea sickness today. Tupias Island not in sight, he tells us that it is *etópa* (we are past it) for the same word is used by them for the setting of the sun and the leaving behind of an Island. He says however that tomorrow or next day we shall see another which he calls *Oheteróa*.

13. At noon today high land in sight which proved to be Tupias Island of Oheteróa. At night we were close in with it. He said that there were many other Islands from south to south west of us most of their names beginning with *Ohete*, none however were in sight.

Many Albecores have been about the ship all the evening, Tupia took one and had not his rod broke would probably have taken many. He used an Indian fish hook made of mother of pearl so that it served at the same time both for hook and bait.

14. Close under the land: a boat was sent from the ship in which Dr Solander and myself took a passage, she rowed right in for the land on which several natives appeared armed with long lances. The boat standing along shore not intending to land till she got round the next point made them (I believe) think that we were afraid of them. The main body about 60
14. sat down upon the shore and sent two of their number forwards, who after walking sometime abreast of us leap’d into the water intending to swim to us but were soon left behind; two more then atempted the same thing and were in like manner left behind; a single man then ran forwards and taking good start of the boat fetchd her easily, but when he was alongside I could not persuade the officer of the boat to take him, notwithstanding it was so fair an opportunity of making freinds with a people who certainly lookd upon us as their enemies. He was therefore left behind as was another who followd his example.

We now came round a point where all our followers left us. We had opend a large bay at the bottom of which we saw another body of men armd like the former; here we hopd to land and pushd towards the place. The natives had pushd off a canoe which came out to meet us. As soon as it aproachd us we lay upon our oars and calld to them that we were freinds and would give them nails if they would come to us; they after a very little hesitation came up to the boats stern and took the nails that were given them, seemingly with great satisfaction, but in less than a minute seemd to have formd a design of boarding our boat and taking her, in pursuance of which 3 leapd almost in an instant into our boat and the others brought up the canoe which had flown off a little intending probably to follow their countrey mens example. The first who came in the boat was close
14. to me, he instantly snatchd my powder horn out of my pocket which I immediately laid hold of and wrenchd out of his hand, not without some difficulty; I then laid my hand on his breast and attempted to shove him overboard but he was two strong for me and kept his place. The officer orderd a musquet to be fir’d over their heads his own having mis’d fire, two were immediately fir’d and they all instantly leapd into the water; one of our people however inconsiderately leveld a 3d at one of them who was swimming and the ball gras’d his forehead but I beleive did him no material harm, as he recoverd his boat and stood up in her as active as ever. The canoe now stood for the shore where were a large number of people collected I beleive 200; our boat also pulld in but found the land guarded all round with a shoal upon which the sea broke much, so was obligd to go along shore in hopes of finding a more convenient landing place. We saw the canoe go ashore where the people were assembled who came down to her seemingly very eager to enquire into our behavior to them; soon after a single man came along shore armd with a long lance, he came abreast of the boat and then began to dance and shake his weapon calling out in a
14. very shrill voice, which we understood from Tupia was a defiance sent from the people. We rowd along shore and he attended us sometime, we found it however impracticable to land and as for the gentlemen’s tricks we gave ourselves very little concern about them: we therefore resolv’d to return to the bay and try if it would be practicable to land where the Canoe did, hoping that if we should not the people would at least come and make peace either on the shoal or in their Canoes of which we saw only two in the Island, which was one more than Tupia allow’d them who said they had but one.

As we rowd gently along shore our defying champion was join’d by another likewise armd with a lance and dress’d with a large cap of the tail feathers of tropick birds and his body cover’d, as indeed many of them were, with stripes of different coulourd cloths, yellow red and brown; he (who we now call’d Harlequin) dance’d as the other had done only with much more nimbleness and dexterity. These two were soon after join’d by an older looking man likewise armd who came gravely down to the beach and hailing us ask’d from whence we came, Tupia answer’d him from Otahite. The three then went peaceably along shore till the boat came to a shoal upon which a few people were collected; they talk’d together and soon after began to pōorah or pray very loud to which Tupia made his responses but continued
14. to tell us that they were not our friends. We after this entered into a parley with them, telling them that if they would lay by their arms which were lances and clubbs we would come ashore and truck with them for whatever they would bring; they agreed but upon condition that we should lay down our musquets, an article which we did not think fit to comply with, so our negotiation dropt for the present at least. After a little time however they took courage and came nearer to the boat, near enough to begin to trade which they did very fairly for a smal quantity of cloth and some of their weapons, but as they gave us no hopes of provisions or indeed any thing else unless we would venture through a narrow channel to the shore we put off the boat and left them.

In this expedition we laboured under many disadvantages: we left the ship in a hurry taking with us no kind of arms but our musquets, which without bayonets would have made but a poor resistance against these peoples weapons all meant to fight hand to hand; but what was worst of all was the difficulty of landing which we could not do without wetting ourselves and arms unless we had ventured through the passage I have spoke of, which was so small that tho the weather was perfectly fine the sea often broke right across it, so that had we gone in and the least surf rose we could never have got out again but must have remaind the night in shoal water, liable to any stratagems that our enemies might devise, ill furnish'd as we were to oppose
August 1769

The Island to all appearance that we saw was more barren than any thing we have seen in these seas, the chief produce seeming to be Etóa (the wood of which make their weapons); indeed every where along shore where we saw plantations they were coverd by trees of this kind planted between them and the sea. It is without a reef and the ground in the bay we were in so foul and corally that tho a ship might come almost close to the shore she could not possibly anchor. The water was clearer than I ever saw it, I saw distinctly the ground at 25 fathoms depth.

The people seemd strong lusty and well made but were rather browner than those we have left behind; they were not tattowd on their backsides, but instead of that had black marks about as broad as my hand under their armpits the sides of which were deeply indented, they had also circles of smaller ones round their arms and legs. Their dress was indeed most singular as well as the cloth with which they were dressd which I shall first describe. It was made of the same materials as the inhabitants of the other Islands make use of and generally died of a very bright and deep yellow. Upon this was on some sorts spread a composition which coverd it like oil colour or varnish, it was either red or of a dark lead colour; upon this again was painted stripes in many different patterns with infinite regularity much in the same way as some
14. lute string silks in England are wove, all the streight lines upon them drawn with such accuracy that we were almost in doubt whether or not they were stampd on with some kind of press. The red cloth was painted in this manner with black, the lead coulourd with white. Of this cloth, generaly the lead coulourd, they had on a short jacket that reachd about their Knees made of one peice with a hole through which they put their heads, the sides of which hole was contrary to any thing I have seen before stichd with long stitches. This was confind to their bodies by a peice of Yellow cloth which pass’d behind their necks and came across their breasts in two broad stripes crossing each other, it was then collected round their waists in the form of a belt, under which was another of the red cloth so that the whole made a very gay and warlike apearance. Some had on their heads caps as before describd made of the tails of tropick birds, but they did not become them so well as a peice of white or lead colourd cloth which the most of them had wound on like a small turban.

Their arms consisted of long lances made of the etoa or hard wood well polishd and sharpnd at one end; of these there were some near 20 feet long and scarce so thick as three fingers; they had also clubs or pikes of the same wood about 7 feet long, well polishd and sharpned at one end into a broad point. How expert they may be in the use of these weapons we cannot tell but the weapons themselves seem more intended for shew than use, as the lance was not pointed with
14. the stings of Sting rays, and the clubs or pikes which must do more execution by their weight than their sharpness were not more than half so heavy as the smallest I have seen in the other Islands. Defensive weapons I saw none, they however guarded themselves against such weapons as their own by mats folded and laid upon their breasts and bellies under their other cloths.

Of the few things we saw among these people every one was ornamented infinitely superior to any thing we had before seen: their cloth was better couloured as well as nicely painted, their clubs were better cut out and polishd, the Canoe which we saw tho a very small and very narrow one was nevertheless carvd and ornamented very highly. One thing particularly in her seemed to be calculated rather for the ornaments of a thing that was never intended to go into the water than a boat, which was two lines of small white feathers that were placd on the outside of the canoe which were when we saw them totally wet with the water.

After leaving these unhospitable people we Stood to the Southward as usual and had in the evening a great dew which wetted every thing.

[End of Daily Log in Vol I]
We have now seen 17 Islands in these Seas and been ashore upon 5 of the most principal ones. Of these the Language manners and customs have agreed almost exactly, I should therefore be tempted to conclude that those of the Islands we have not seen differ not materially at least from them. The account I shall give of them is taken chiefly from Otahite where I was well acquainted with their most interior policy, as I found them to be a people so free from deceit that I trusted myself among them almost as freely as I could do in my own country, sleeping continually in their houses in the woods with not so much as a single companion. Whether or not I am right in judging their manners and customs to be general throughout these seas any one who gives himself the trouble of reading this Journal through will be as good a Judge as myself.

All the Islands I have seen are very populous all along the sea coast, where are generally large flats coverd with a vast many breadfruit and Cocoa nut trees. Here are houses almost every 50 yards with their little plantations of Plantains, the tree that makes their cloth &c. but the inland parts are totally uninhabited except in the vallies where are rivers and even there are but a small proportion of people.
to what live upon the flats. They are of the larger size of Europaeans, all excellently made, and some handsome both men and women, the only bad feature they have is their noses which are in general flat, but to balance this their teeth are almost without exception even and white to perfection, and the eyes of the women especially are full of expression and fire. In Colour they differ very much: those of inferior rank who are obliged in the exercise of their professions, fishing especially, to be much exposed to the sun and air are of a dark brown; the superiors again who spend most of their time in their houses under shelter are seldom browner (the women especially) than that kind of Brunette which many in Europe prefer to the finest red and white. Complexion indeed they seldom have tho some I have seen shew a Blush very manifestly; this is perhaps owing to the thickness of their skins, but that fault is in my opinion well compensated by their infinite smoothness much superior to any thing I have met with in Europe.

The men as I have before said are rather large, I have measured one 6 feet 3 1/2 the superior women are also as large as Europaeans but the inferior sort generally small, some very small owing possibly to their early amours which they are much
more addicted to than their superiors. Their hair is almost universally black and rather coarse: this the women wear always cropped short round their ears, the men on the other hand wear it in many various ways, sometimes cropping it short, sometimes letting [it] grow very long and tying it at the top of their heads or letting it hang loose on their shoulders &c. Their beards they also wear in many different fashions always however plucking out a large part of them and keeping that that is left very clean and neat. Both sexes eradicate every hair from under their armpits and they look upon it as a great mark of uncleanliness in us that we did not do the same.

During our stay in these Islands I saw some not more than 5 or 6 who were a total exception to all I have said before. They were whiter even than us but of a dead Colour like that of the nose of a white horse; their eyes hair eyebrows and beards were also white; they were universally short sighted and looked always unwholesome, their skins scurfy and scaly and eyes often full of Rheum. As they had no two of them any connexions with one another I conclude that the difference of colour &c. was totally accidental and did not at all run in families.

So much for their persons. I shall now mention their method of Painting their bodies.
or Tattow as it is called in their language. This they do by inlaying the colour of Black under their skins in such a manner as to be indelible; every one is marked thus in different parts of his body according may be to his humour or different circumstances of his life. Some have ill design'd figures of men, birds or dogs, but they more generally have this figure either simply, as the women are generally marked with it, on every joint of their fingers and toes and often round the outside of their feet, or in different figures of it as square, circles, crescents &c. which both sexes have on their arms and legs; in short they have an infinite diversity of figures in which they place this mark and some of them we were told had significations but this we never learnt to our satisfaction. Their faces are in general left without any marks, I did not see more than one instance to the contrary. Some few old men had the greatest part of their bodies cover'd with large patches of black which ended in deep indentations like coarse imitations of flame, these we were told were not natives of Otahite but came there from a low Island called Noouoora.

Tho they are so various in the application of the figures I have mention'd that both the
quantity and situation of them seems to depend entirely upon the humour of each individual, yet all the Islanders I have seen (except those of Ohiteroa) agree in having all their buttocks covered with a deep black; over this most have arches drawn one over another as high as their short ribs, which are often 1/4 of an inch broad and neatly worked on their edges with indentations &c. These arches are their great pride: both men and women shew them with great pleasure whether as a beauty or a proof of their perseverance and resolution in bearing pain I can not tell, as the pain of doing this is almost intolerable especially the arches upon the loins which are so much more susceptible of pain than the fleshy buttocks.

Their method of doing it I will now describe. The colour they use is lamp black which they prepare from the smoke of a kind of oily nuts used by them instead of candles; this is kept in cocoa nut shells and mixed with water occasionally for use. Their instruments for pricking this under the skin are made of Bone or shell, flat, the lower part of this is cut into sharp teeth from 3 to 20 according to the purposes it is to be used for and the upper fastened to a handle. These teeth are dipped into the black liquor and then drove by quick sharp blows struck upon the handle with
a stick for that purpose into the skin so deep that every stroke is followed by a small quantity of Blood, or serum at least, and the part so marked remains sore for many days before it heals.

I saw this operation performed on the 5th of July on the buttocks of a girl about 14 years of age; for some time she bore it with great resolution but afterwards began to complain and in a little time grew so outrageous that all the threats and force her friends could use could hardly oblige her [to] endure it. I had occasion to remain in an adjoining house an hour at least after this operation began and yet went away before it was finished, tho this was the blacking of only one side of her buttocks the other having been done some weeks before.

It is done between the ages of 14 and 18 and so essential it is that I have never seen one single person of years of maturity without it. What can be a sufficient inducement to suffer so much pain is difficult to say; not one Indian (tho I have asked hundreds) would ever give me the least reason for it; possibly superstition may have something to do with it, nothing else in my opinion could be a sufficient cause for so apparently absurd a custom. As for the smaller marks on the fingers, arms &c they may be intended
only for beauty; Our European ladies have found the Convenience of patches, and something of that kind is more usefull here, where the best complexions are much inferior to theirs, and yet whiteness is esteemd the first Essential in beauty.

They are certainly as cleanly a people as any under the sun except in their lousyness, every one of them wash their whole bodies in the running water as soon as they rise in the morn, at noon, and before they sleep at night; and if they have not such water near their houses as often happens, they will go a good way to it; as for their lice had they the means only they would certainly be as free from them as any inhabitants of so warm a climate could be. Those to whom combs were given proved this, for those who I was best acquainted with kept themselves very clear while we staid by the use of them; as for their eating lice it is a custom which none but children and those of the inferior people can be charged with. Their cloths also as well as their persons are kept almost without spot or stain; the superiour people spend much of their time in repairing, dying, &c the cloth, which seems to be a genteel amusement for the ladies here as it is in Europe.

Their Clothes are either of a kind of cloth made of the Bark of a tree, or mats of
several different sorts. Of all these and their manner
of making them I shall speak in another place, here I
shall only mention their method of covering and
adorning their Persons, which is of course most
various as they never form dresses, or sew any two
things together. It must be a peice of cloth which is
generaly 2 yards wide and 11 long, is sufficient
Clothing for any one, and this they put on in a
thousand different ways, often very genteel. Their
dress of form however is, in the women, a kind of
Peticoat (Parou) wrappd round their hipps, and
reaching about the middle of their leggs; 1, 2 or 3
peices of thick cloth about 2 1/2 yards long and one
wide (Te buta) through a hole in the middle of which
they put their heads, and suffer the sides of it to hang
before and behind them, the open edges serving to
give their arms liberty of moving; round the ends of
this, about as high as their wastes, are tied 2 or 3 large
peices of thin Cloth, and sometimes another or two
thrown over their shoulders loosely, for the rich seem
to shew their greatest pride in wearing a large quantity
of cloth. The dress of the men differs but little from
this; their bodys are rather more bare, and instead of
the petticoat they have a peice of Cloth passed
between their leggs and round their waists (Maro)
which keeps up the strictest rules of decency, and at
the same time gives them rather more liberty to use
their
limbs than the women's dress will allow. Thus much of the richer people, the poorer sort have only a small allowance of cloth given them from the tribes or families to which they belong, and must use that to the best advantage.

It is reckoned no shame for any part of the body to be expos'd to view except those which all mankind hide; it was no uncommon thing for the richest of the men to come to see us with a large quantity of cloth roll'd round their loins, and all the rest of their bodies naked, tho' the cloth wrapp'd round them was sufficient to have cloth'd a dozen people. The women at sun set always bard their bodys down to the navel, which seemd to be a kind of easy undress to them as to our ladies to pull off any finery that has been usd during the course of the day, and change it for a loose gown and capachin.

Both sexes shade their faces from the sun with little bonnets of cocoa nut leaves which they make occasionaly in a very few minutes, some have these made of fine matting but that is less common. Of matting they have several sorts, some very fine, which is usd in exactly the same manner as Cloth for their dresses, chiefly in rainy weather, as their cloth will not bear the least wett.

Ornaments they have very few, they are very fond of earings but wear them only in one ear.
When we came they had them of their own, made of Shell, stone, berries, red pease, and some small pearls which they wore 3 tied together; but our beads very quickly supplyd their place; they also are very fond of flowers, especialy of the Cape Jasmine of which they have great plenty planted near their houses; these they stick into the holes of their ears, and into their hair, if they have enough of them which is but seldom. The men wear feathers often the tails of tropick birds stuck upright in their hair, they have also a kind of wiggs made upon one string of the hair of men, dogs, or Cocoa nut strings, which they tie under their hair upon the back of their heads; I have seen them also wear whimsical garlands made of a variety of flowers stuck into a peice of the rind of plaintain, or of scarlet pease stuck upon a peice of wood with gum, but these are not common. Their great pride of Dress seems to be centered almost in what they call *Tamou*, which is human hair platted, scarce thicker than common thread, of this I may easily affirm that I have peices above a mile in lenght worked upon an end without a single Knot, and I have seen 5 or 6 of such peices wound round the head of one woman, the effect of which if done with taste was most becoming.
Thus much of their common dresses, their dancing dresses I have describd in the Island of Ulhietea and that of the Heiva I shall when I come to their mourning ceremonies. They have also several more suited to particular ceremonies which I had not an opportunity of seeing, tho I was very desirous, as the singular taste of those promise much novelty at least if not something worth imitation in whatever they take pains with.

I had almost forgot the Oil with which they anoint their heads, monoe it is calld in their language, a custom more disagreeable to Europeans than any other among them. This is made of Cocoa nut oil in which some sweet woods or flowers are infusd; the oil is most commonly very rancid and consequently the wearers of it smell most disagreeably, at first we found it so but very little use reconcild me at least very compleatly to it. These people are free from all smells of mortality and surely rancid as their oil is it must be preferrd to the odoriferous perfume of toes and armpits so frequent in Europe.

The houses or rather dwellings of these people are admirably calculated for the continual warmth of their climate. They do not build them in villages or towns but seperate each from the other according to the size of the estate the owner of the house possesses; they are always in the woods and no
more ground is cleared away for each house than is just sufficient to hinder the dropping of the branches from rotting the thatch with which they are covered, so that you step from the house immediately under shade and that the most beautiful imaginable. No country can boast such delightful walks as this, the whole plains where the people live are covered with groves of Breadfruit and cocoa nut trees without underwood; these are intersected in all directions by the paths which go from one house to the other, so the whole country is a shade than which nothing can be more grateful in a climate where the sun has so powerful an influence. They are built without walls so that the air cooled by the shade of the trees has free access in whatever direction it happens to blow. I shall describe one of the middle size which will give an Idea of all the rest as they differ scarce at all in fashion.

Its length was 24 feet, breadth 11, extreme height 8 1/2, height of the eaves 3 1/2; it consisted of nothing more than a thatched roof of the same form as in England supported by 3 rows of posts or pillars, one on each side and one in the middle; the floor was covered some inches deep with soft hay upon which here and there were laid mats for the convenience of setting down; this is almost the only furniture as few houses have more than one stool which is the
property of the master of the family and constantly used by him, and most are entirely without. These houses serve them chiefly to sleep in and make their cloth &c., they generally eat in the open air under the shade of the next tree if the weather is not rainy. The matts which serve them to set upon in the day time are also their beds at night; the cloth which they wear in the day serves for covering, and a little wooden stool, block of wood or a bundle of cloth for a pillow. Their order is generally this, near the middle lay the master of the house and his wife and with them the rest of the married people, next to them the unmarried women, next to them at some small distance the unmarried men; the servants, *Toutous* as they are called, generally lay in the open air or if it rains come just within shelter. Thus all privacy is banished even from those actions which the decency of Europeans keep most secret: this no doubt is the reason why both sexes express the most indecent ideas in conversation without the least emotion; in this their language is very copious and they delight in such conversation beyond any other. Chastity indeed is but little valued especially among the middling people; if a wife is found guilty of a breach of it her only punishment is a beating.
from her husband. Notwithstanding this some of the Eares or chiefs are I believe perfectly virtuous. They indeed tho they have no decency in conversation have privacy; most or all of them have small houses which when they move are tied upon their Canoes; these have walls made of Cocoa nut leaves &c. in them they constantly sleep, man and wife, generally lifting them off from their canoes and placing them on the ground in any situation they think proper.

Besides these there are another kind of houses much larger. One in our neighbourhood measured length 162 feet, breadth 28 1/2, height of one of the middle row of pillars 18. These we conjectured to be common to all the inhabitants of a district and raised and kept up by their joint labour, of use maybe for any meetings or consultations, for the reception of any visitants of consequence, &c; such we have also seen used as dwelling houses by the very principal people, some of them much larger than this which I have here described.

In the article of food these happy people may almost be said to be exempt from the curse of our forefather; scarcely can it be said that they earn their bread with the sweat of their brow when their chiefest sustenance Bread fruit
is procurd with no more trouble than that of climbing a tree and pulling it down. Not that the trees grow here spontaneously but if a man should in the course of his life time plant 10 such trees, which if well done might take the labour of an hour or thereabouts, he would as compleatly fulfull his duty to his own as well as future generations as we natives of less temperate climates can do by toiling in the cold of winter to sew and in the heat of summer to reap the annual produce of our soil, which when once gatherd into the barn must be again resowd and re-reapd as often as the Colds of winter or the heats of Summer return to make such labour disagreeable.

O fortunati nimium sua si bona norint

may most truly be applied to these people; benevolent nature has not only supplyd them with nescessaries but with abundance of superfluities. The Sea about them in the neighbourhood of which they always live supplys them with vast variety of fish better than what is generaly met with between the tropicks, but these they get not without some trouble; every one desires to have them and there is not enough for all, tho while we remaind in these seas we saw
above species more perhaps than our own Island can boast of. I speak now only of what is more properly calld Fish; but almost every thing which comes out of the sea is eat and esteemd by these people, Shellfish, lobsters, Crabbs, even Sea insects and what the seamen call blubbers of many kinds conduce to their support. Some of the last indeed that are of a tough nature are prepard by suffering them to stink; custom will make almost any meat palatable and the women especialy are very fond of this, tho after they had eat it I confess I was not extreemly fond of their company.

Besides the Bread fruit the earth almost spontaneously produces Cocoa nuts, Bananas of 13 sorts the best I have ever eat, Plantains but indiffer[e]nt, a fruit not unlike an apple which when ripe is very pleasant, Sweet potatoes, Yamms, Cocos, another kind of Arum known in the East Indies by the name of [Arum] , a fruit known there by the name of [Eug mallacc] and reckond most delicious, Sugar cane which the inhabitants eat raw, a root of the Salop kind Calld by the inhabitants Pea, the root also of a plant calld Ethee and a fruit in a Pod like a large Hull of a Kidney bean, which
when roasted eats much like Chestnuts and is call[d] *Ahee*; besides a fruit of a tree which they call *wharra* in appearance like a pine apple, the fruit of a tree calld by them *Nono*, the roots and perhaps leaves of a fern and the roots of a plant calld *Theve* which 4 are eat only by the poorer sort of people in times of scarcity.

For tame animals they have Hogs, fowls and doggs, which latter we learn’d to eat from them and few were there of the nicest of us but allowd that a S-Sea dog was next to an English lamb; this indeed must be said in their favour that they live intirely upon vegetables, probably our dogs in England would not eat half as well. Their pork is certainly most excellent tho sometimes too fat, their fowls are not a bit better rather worse maybe than ours at home, often very tough.

Tho they seem to esteem flesh very highly yet in all the Islands I have seen the quantity they have of it is very unequal to the number of their people, it is therefore seldom usd among them. Even their most principal people have it not every day or even week, tho some of them had piggs that we saw quarterd upon different
Estates as we send Cocks to walk’s in England; when any of these kill a hog it seems to be divided almost equally among all his dependands himself taking little more than the rest. Vegetables are their chief food and of these they eat a large quantity. Cookery seems to have been little studied here: they have only two methods of applying fire, broiling, or baking as we call’d it which is done thus. A hole is dug in depth and size according to what is to be prepared seldom exceeding a foot in depth, in this a heap is made of wood and stones alternately laid; fire is then put to it which by the time it has consum’d the wood has heated the stones sufficiently just enough to discolour any thing which touches them. The heap is then divided; half is left in the hole the bottom of which is paved with them, on them any kind of provisions are laid always neatly wrapped up in leaves, the whole is then covered with leaves on which are laid the remaining hot stones then leaves again 3 or 4 inches thick and over them any ashes rubbish or dirt that lays at hand. In this situation it remains about 2 hours in
which time I have seen a midling hog very well done,
Indeed I am of opinion that victuals dressd this way
are more juicy if not more Equably done than by any
of our European methods, large fish more especialy.
Bread fruit cookd in this manner becomes soft and
something like a boild potatoe, tho not quite so
farinaceous as a good one yet more so than the
midling sort. Of this 2 or 3 dishes are made by
beating it with a stone pestil till it make a paste,
mixing water or Cocoa nut liquor with it and adding
ripe plantains, bananas, sour paste &c.

As I have mentiond Sour paste I will proceed to
de[s]cribe what it is. Bread fruit by what I can find
remains in season only 9 or 10 of their 13 months so
that a reserve of food must be made for those months
when they are without it. To do this the fruit is
gatherd when just upon the point of ripening and laid
in heaps where it undergoes a fermentation and
becomes disagreably sweet; the core is then taken out
which is easily done as a small pull at the stalk draws
it out intire, and the rest of the fruit thrown into a hole
dug for that purpose generaly in their houses; the sides
and bottom of which are neatly lind
with grass; the whole is coverd with leaves and heavy stones laid upon them. Here it undergoes a second fermentation and becomes sourish in which condition it will keep as they told me many months. Custom has I suppose made this agreeable to their palates tho we dislikd it extreemly, we seldom saw them make a meal without some [of] it in some shape or other.

As the whole making of this *Mahai* as they call it depends upon fermentation I suppose it does not always succeed. It is done at least always by the old women who make a kind of superstitious mystery of it. No one except the people employd by them is allowd to come even into that part of the house where it is; I myself spoild a large heap of it only by inadvertenly touching some leaves that lay upon it as I walkd by the outside of the house where it was. The old directress of it told me that from that circumstance it most certainly would fail and immediately pulld it down before my face, who did less regret the mischeif I had done as it gave me an opportunity of se[e]ing the preparation which perhaps I should not otherwise have been allowd to do.
To this plain diet prepared with so much simplicity salt water is the universal sauce; those who live at the greatest distance from the sea are never without it keeping it in large bamboos set up against the sides of their houses. When they eat a coconut shell full of it always stands near them, into which they dip every morsel especially of fish and often leave the whole soaking in it, drinking at intervals large supps of it out of their hands, so that a man may use 1/2 a pint of it at a meal. They have also a sauce made of the Kernels of cocoa nuts fermented till they dissolve into a buttery paste and beat up with salt water; the taste of this is very strong and at first was to me most abominably nauseous, a very little use however reconciled me entirely to it so much that I should almost prefer it to our own sauces with fish. It is not common among them, possibly it is thought ill management among them to use cocoa nuts so lavishly, or we were on the Islands at the time when they were scarce ripe enough for this purpose.

Small fish they often eat raw and sometimes large ones. I myself by being much with them learnt to do the same insomuch that I have made meals often of raw fish and bread fruit,
by which I learnt that with my stomach at least it agreed as well as dressd and if any thing was still easier of digestion, howsoever contrary this may appear to the common opinion of the people at home.

Drink they have none but water and cocoa nut Juice, nor do they seem to have any method of Intoxication among them. Some there were who drank pretty freely of our liquors and in a few instances became very drunk but seemd far from pleasd with their intoxication, the individuals afterwards shunning a repition of it instead of greedily desiring it as most Indians are said to do.

Their tables or at least apparatus for Eating are set out with great neatness tho the small quantity of their furniture will not admit of much Elegance. I will describe the manner in which one of their principal people is servd; they commonly eat alone unless some stranger makes a second in their mess.

He setts commonly under the shade of the next tree or on the shady side of the house;
a large quantity of leaves either of Bread fruit or Banana are neatly spread before him which serves instead of a table cloth, a basket is then set by him which contains his provisions and two cocoa nut shells, one full of fresh water the other of salt. He begins by washing his hands and mouth thoroughly with the fresh water which he repeats almost continually throughout the whole meal. He then takes part of his provision from the basket. Suppose (as it often did) it consisted of 2 or 3 bread fruits, 1 or 2 small fish about as big as a perch in England, 14 or 15 ripe bananas or half as many apples: he takes half a breadfruit, peels of the rind and takes out the core with his nails; he then cramms his mouth as full with it as it can possibly hold, and while he chews that unlapps the fish from the leaves in which they remain tied up since they were dressd and breaks one of them into the salt water; the rest as well as the remains of the bread fruit lay before him upon the leaves. He generally gives a fish or part of one to some one of his dependants, many of whom set round him, and then takes up
a very small peice of that that he has broke into the salt water in the ends of all the fingers of one hand and sucks it into his mouth to get with it as much salt water as possible, every now and then taking a small sup of it either out of the palm of his hand or the cocoa nut shell. In the mean time one of the standers by has prepar'd a young cocoa nut by peeling of the outer rind with his teeth (an operation which at first appears very surprizing to Europeans but depends so much upon a sl[e]ight that before we left the Islands many of us were ourselves able to do it, even myself who can scarce crack a nut) which when he chuses to drink he takes from him and boring a hole through the shell with his finger or breaking the nut with a stone drinks or sucks out the water. When he has eat his bread fruit and fish he begins with his plantains, one of which makes no more than a mouthful if they are as big as black puddings; if he has apples a shell is nescessary to peel them, one is pickd of the ground where they are always plenty and tossd to him, with this he scrapes or cutts off the skin rather awkwardly as he wastes almost half the apple in doing it. If he has any tough kind of meat instead of fish he must have a knife,
for which purpose a piece of Bamboo is tossd him of
which he in a moment makes one by splitting it
transversly with his nail, with which he can cut tough
meat or tendons at least as readily as we can with a
common knife. All this time one of his people has
been employd with a stone pestle and a block of wood
beating breadfruit which by much beating and
sprinkling with water he Reduces to the consistence of
soft paste; he then takes a vessel made like a butchers
tray and in it he lays his paste mixing it with either
bananas sour paste or making it up alone according to
the taste of his master; to this he adds water pouring it
on by degrees and squeezing it often through his hand
till it comes to the consistence of thick custard; a large
cocoa nut shell full of this he then sets before his
master who supps it down as we would do a custard if
we had not a spoon to eat it with; and his dinner is
then finishd by washing his hands and mouth, cleaning
the cocoa nut shells and putting any thing that may be
left into the basket again.

It may be thought that I have given rather too large a
quantity of provision to my eater
when I say he has eat 3 bread fruits each bigger than two fists, 2 or 3 fish and 14 or 15 plantains or Bananas, each if they are large 6 or 7 inches long and 4 or 5 round, and conclude his dinner with about a quart of a food as substantial as the thickest unbaked custard; but this I do affirm that it is but few of the many of them I was acquainted with that eat less and many a great deal more. But I shall not insist that any man who may read this should beleive it as an article of faith; I shall be content if politeness makes him think as Joe Millers freind said, ‘Well Sir as you say so I beleive it but by g-d had I seen it myself I should have doubted it excedingly’.

I have said that they seldom eat together the better sort hardly ever, even two brothers or sisters have each their respective baskets one of which contains victuals the other cocoa nut shells &c. for furniture of their seperate tables. These were brought every day to our tents to those of our freinds who having come from a distance chose to spend the whole day or sometimes 2 or 3 in our company; these two relations would go out and setting
down upon the ground within a few yards of each other turn their faces different ways and make their meals without saying a word to each other.

The women carefully abstain from eating with the men or even any of the victuals that have been prepared for them. All their victuals are prepared separately by boys and kept in a shed by themselves where they are looked after by the same boys who attend them at their meals; notwithstanding this when we visited them at their houses the women with whom we had any particular acquaintance or friendship would constantly ask us to partake of their meals, which we often did, eating out of the same basket and drinking out of the same cup. The old women however would by no means allow the same liberty but would esteem their victuals polluted if we touched them; in some instances I have seen them throw them away when we had inadvertently defiled them by handling the vessels which contained them.

What can be the motive for so unsocial a custom I cannot in any shape guess, especially as they are a people in every other
instance fond of society and very much so of their 
women. I have often asked the reason of them but they 
have as often evaded the question or given me no 
other answer but that they did it because it was right, 
and expressed much disgust when I told them that in 
England men and women eat together and the same 
victuals; they however constantly affirm that it does 
not proceed from any superstitious motive, Eatua they 
say has nothing to do with it. But whatever the 
motive may be it certainly affects their outward 
manners more than their principles: in the tents for 
instance we never saw an instance of the women 
partaking of our victuals at our table, but we have 
several [times] seen them go 5 or 6 together into the 
 servants apartment and there eat very heartily of 
whatever they could find, nor were they at all disturb'd 
if we came in while they were doing [it] tho we had 
before us'd all the intreatys we were masters of to 
invite them to partake with us. When a woman was 
alone she would often eat even in our company, but 
always took care to extort a strong promise that we 
should not let her countrey people
know what she had done.

After their meals and in the heat of the day they often sleep, middle ag’d people especialy, the better sort of whom seem to spend most of their time in eating or sleeping. The young boys and girls are uncommonly lively and active and the old people generaly more so than the middle ag’d ones, which perhaps is owing to the excessive venery which the heat of the climate and their dissolute manners tempt them to. Diversions they have but few: shooting with the bow is the cheif one I have seen at Otahite which is confind almost intirely to the cheifs; the[y] shoot for distance only with arrows unfledgd, kneeling upon one knee and dropping the bow from their hands at the instant of the arrows parting from it. I measurd a shot that Tubourai Tamite made, 274 yards, yet he complaind that as the bow and arrows were bad he could not shoot so far as he ought to have done. At Ulhietea bows were less common, but the people amusd themselves by throwing a kind of Javelin 8 or 9 feet long at a mark which they did with a good deal of force and dexterity, often striking the body of a plantain tree their mark in the very center, but I could never observe that either these or the Otahite people stakd any thing but seemd to contend merely for the honour of victory.
Musick is very little known to them which is the more wonderfull as they are very fond of it. They have only two instruments the flute and the drum. The former is made of a hollow bamboo about a foot long in which is 3 holes; into one of these they blow with one nostril stopping the other with the thumb of the left hand, the other two they stop and unstop with the fore finger of the left and middle finger of the right hand; by this means they produce 4 notes and no more of which they have made one tune that serves them for all occasions, to which they sing a number of songs pehay as they call them generally consisting of two lines affecting a coarse metre and generally in Rhime. May be they would appear more musical if we well understood the accent of their language but are as downright prose as can be wrote. I shall give two or 3 specimens of songs made upon our arrival:

Te de pahai de parow-a
Ha maru no mina.
E pahah Tayo malama tai ya  
No Tabane tonatou whannomiya

E Turai eattu terara patee whennua toai  
Ino o maio Pretane to whennuaia no Tute.

At any time of the day when they are lazy they amuse themselves by singing these couplets but especially after dark. Their candles are then lighted which are made of the kernel of a nut abounding much in oil; many of these are stuck upon a skewer of wood one below the other and give a very tolerable light which they often keep burning an hour after dark and if they have many strangers in the house it is sometimes kept up all night - a kind of guard maybe upon the chastity of the ladies who upon such occasions are very shy of receiving any mark of regard from their lovers.

Their Drumms they manage rather better: they are made of a hollow block of wood coverd with sharks skin, with these they make out 5 or 6 tunes and accompany the flute not disagreeably; they know
also how to tune two drums of Different notes into concord which they do nicely enough. They also tune their flutes if two play upon flutes which are not in unison, the short one is lengthened by adding a small roll of leaf which is tied round the end of it and moved up and down till their ears (which are certainly very nice) are satisfied. The drumms are used chiefly in their heivas which are at Otahiti no more than a set of musicians, 2 drums for instance two flutes and two singers, who go about from house to house and play; they are always received and rewarded by the master of the family who gives them a piece of cloth or whatever else he can best spare and while they stay, 3 or 4 hours maybe, receives all his neighbours who crowd his house full. This diversion the people are extravagantly fond of most likely because like concerts assemblies &c. in Europe they serve to bring the Sexes easily together at a time when the very thoughts of meeting has opened the heart and made way for pleasing Ideas. The grand Dramatick heiva which we saw at Ulhietea is I believe occasionally performed in all the Islands but that I have so fully described in the Journal of that Island Augst ye 3d 7th and 8th that I need say no more about it.
Besides this they dance especialy the young girls whenever they can collect 8 or 10 together, singing most indecent words using most indecent actions and setting their mouths askew in a most extraordinary manner, in the practise of which they are brought up from their earlyest childhood; in doing this they keep time to a surprizing nicety, I might almost say as true as any dancers I have seen in Europe tho their time is certainly much more simple. This excercise is however left off as soon as they arrive at Years of maturity for as soon as ever they have formd a connection with a man they are expected to leave of Dancing *Timorodee* as it is calld.

One amusement more I must mention tho I confess I hardly dare touch upon it as it is founded upon a custom so devilish, inhuman, and contrary to the first principles of human nature that tho the natives have repeatedly told it to me, far from concealing it rather looking upon it as a branch of freedom upon which they valued themselves, I can hardly bring myself to beleive it much less expect that any body Else shall. It is this that more than half of the better sort of the inhabitants of the Island have like Comus in Milton enterd into a resolution of enjoying free liberty in love without a possibility of being troubled or disturbd
by its consequences; these mix together with the utmost freedom seldom cohabiting together more than one or two days by which means they have fewer children than they would otherwise have, but those who are so unfortunate as to be thus begot are smotherd at the moment of their birth. Some of these people have been pointed out to me by name and on being askd have not denyd the fact, who have contracted intimacies and livd together for years and even now continue to do so, in the course of which 2, 3 or more children have been born and destroyd.

They are calld Arreoy and have meetings among themselves where the men amuse themselves with wrestling &c. and the women with dancing the indecent dances before mentiond, in the course of which they give full liberty to their desires but I beleive keep strictly up to the appearances of decency. I never was admitted to see them, one of our gentlemen saw part of one but I beleive very little of their real behavior tho he saw enough to make him give credit to what we had been told.

This custom as indeed it is natural to suppose Owes as we were told its existence cheifly
to the men. A Woman howsoever fond she may be of the name of Arreoy and the liberty attending it before she conceives, generally desires much to forfeit that title for the preservation of her child: in this she has not the smallest influence; if she cannot find a man who will own it she must of course destroy it; and if she can, with him alone it lies whether or not it shall be preserv’d: sometimes it is, but in that case both the man and woman forfeit their title of Arreoy and the privilege annexed thereunto, and must for the future be known by the term Whannownow, or bearer of children: a title as disgraceful among these people as it ought to be honourable in every good and well governed society. In this case the man and woman generally live together as man and wife for the remainder of their lives.

The great facility with which these people have always procur’d the necessaries of life may very reasonably be thought to have originaly sunk them into a kind of indolence which has as it were benumb’d their inventions, and prevented their producing such a variety of Arts as might reasonably be expected from the aproaches they have made in their manners to the politeness of
the Europeans. To this may also be added a fault which is too frequent even among the politest nations, I mean an invincible attachment to the Customs which they have learnt from their forefathers which these people are indeed in this degree excusable for: they derive their original not from Creation but from the womb of an inferior divinity who was herself with those of equal rank descended from the God Causer of Earthquakes; they therefore look upon it as a Kind of Sacrilege to attempt to amend Customs which they suppose to have had their original either from their deities or their first ancestors, who they hold as little inferior to the divin[i]ties themselves.

The thing in which they shew the most ingenuity is the making and dying of their Cloth: in the description of these especialy the latter I shall be rather diffuse, as I am not without hopes that my countrey men may receive some advantage either from the things themselves or at least by hints derivd from them.

The Material of which it is made is the interior bark or liber of 3 sorts of trees, the Chinese paper mulberry *Morus Papyrifera*, the Breadfruit tree *Sitodium*
altile, and a tree much resembling the wild fig tree of the west Indians *Ficus prolixia*. Of the first which is calld by them Äouta the finest and whitest cloth is made which is worn cheifly by the principal people, it is likewise the properest for dying especialy with the Colour of red; of the second which is calld by them ooroo is made a cloth inferior to the former in whiteness and softness, worn cheifly by people of inferior degree; of the third which is much the most rare is made a coarse harsh Cloth of the colour of the deepest brown paper, which is the only one they have that at all resists water. It is much valued, the greatest quantity of it is perfumd and usd by the most principal people as a Morning dress.

These three trees are cultivated with much care especialy the former which covers the largest part of their cultivated land. Young plants of them only are us’d of 1 or 2 years growth, whose great merit is to be thin, streight, and tall, without branches; to prevent the growth of which they pluck off with great care all the lower leaves and their Gemms, as often as there is any appearance of a tendency to produce branches.
Their Method of manufacturing the Bark is the same in all the sorts: one description of it will therefore be sufficient: first then, the thin cloth they begin to make thus. When the trees are arrived at a sufficient size they are drawn up and the roots and tops cut off and stripped of their leaves; the best of the Aouta are in this state about 3 or 4 feet long and as thick as a man's finger but the ooro are considerably larger. The bark of these rods is then slit up longitudinally and in this manner drawn off the stick; when all are stripped the bark is carried to some brook or running water into which it is laid to soak with stones upon it and in this situation it remains some days. When sufficiently soaked the women servants go down to the river, and stripping themselves set down in the water and scrape the pieces of bark, holding them against a flat smooth board, with the shell called by the English shell merchants Tygers tongue Tellina Gargadia, dipping it continually in water until all the outer green bark is rubbed and washed away and nothing remains but the very fine fibres of the inner bark. This work is generally finish'd in the
afternoon; in the evening these pieces are spread out upon Plantain leaves. In doing this I suppose there is some difficulty as the mistress of the family generally presides, all that I could observe was that they laid them 2 or 3 layers thick, and seemed very careful to make them every where of equal thickness; so that if any part of a piece of Bark was scraped thinner than it ought, another piece of the same thin quality was laid over it, in order to render it of the same thickness as the next. When laid out in this manner the size of the piece of cloth [is] 11 or 12 yards long and not more than a foot broad, for as the longitudinal fibres are all laid lengthwise they do not expect it to stretch in that direction tho they well know how considerably it will in the other. In this state they suffer it to remain till morning, by which time a large proportion of the water with which when laid out it is thoroughly soakd is either drain'd off or evaporated and the fibres begin to adhere together, so that the whole
may be lifted from the ground without dropping in peices. It is then taken away by the women servants who beat it in the following manner: they lay it upon a long peice of wood one side of which is very Even and flat, which side is put under the Cloth; as many women then as they can muster or as can work at the board begin; each is furnishd with a battoon made of a very hard wood calld by the natives Etoa (Casuarina equisetifolia) these are about a foot long and square with a handle; on each of the 4 faces of the square are many small furrows of as many different fineness, in the first or coarsest not more than [15] in the finest one [56] which cover the whole face of the side. With the coarsest then they begin, keeping time with their strokes in the same manner as smiths or Anchor smiths, and continue until the Cloth which extends itself very fast under these strokes shews by the too great thinness of the Grooves which are made in it that a finer side of the beater is requisite; in the same manner they proceed to the finest side with which they finish, unless the Cloth is to be of that very fine sort which they call Hoboo which is almost as thin as muslin. For the making of
this they double the peice several times and beat it out again and afterwards bleach it in the sun and air which in these Climates cause whiteness in a very short time, but I beleive that the finest of their Hoboo does not come to either its whiteness or softness untill it has been worn some time, then washd and beat over again with the very finest beaters. Of this thin cloth they have as many different sorts almost as we have of Linnen, distinguishing it into different finenesses and the different materials of which it is made. Each peice is from 9 to 15 yards in length and about 2 and a half broad and serves them for Cloths in the day and bedding at night. When by use it is sufficiently worn and become dirty it is carried to the river and washd, chiefly by letting it soak in a gentle stream fasned to the bottom by a stone, or if very dirty wringing it and squeeing it gently; several of the peices of Cloth so washd are then laid on each other and being beat with the coarsest side of the beater adhere together and become a cloth as thick as coarse broad cloth, then which nothing can be more soft or delicious to the feel. This however is not the case with it immediately after being beat: it is then stiff as if newly starchd and some parts
not adhering together as well as others it looks ragged, and is also of various thicknesses wherever any faults were in the Cloth from whence it was made; to remedy this is the business of the mistress of the family and principal women of it, who in this, and dying, seem to amuse themselves as our English women do in making Caps, ruffles, &c; and in this they spend the greatest part of their time. They are furnishd with each a k[n]ife made of a peice of Bamboo cane, to which they make, by splitting it diagonally with their nails, an edge which with great ease cuts any kind of cloth or soft substance; and a certain quantity of a Paste made of the root of a Plant which serves them also for food, and is calld by them *Pea (Chaitaea Tacca)*: with the former they cut off any ragged edges or ends which may not have been sufficiently fixd down by the Beating; and with the Paste they fasten down others which are less ragged, and also put on patches upon any part which may be thinner than the rest, generaly finishing their work, if intended for the best, by pasting a compleat covering of the finest thin Cloth or *Hoboo* over the whole. They make the thick Cloth also sometimes of thin, only
half worn, and which having been worn by cleanly people is not soild enough to require washing; of this it is sufficient to paste the Edges together, which is done with the same paste. This thick cloth, made in either of these ways, is usd either for the garment calld Maro, which is a long peice passd between the legs and round the waste that serves instead of breeches; or the Tebuta as it is calld, a garment usd equally by both sexes instead of a Coat or gown, which exactly resembles that worn by the inhabitants of Peru and Chili that is calld by the Spanyards Poncho.

The cloth itself both thick and thin resembles most the finest cottons in softness especially in which article it even exceeds them. Its tenderness (for it tears by the smallest accident) makes it very impossible that it can ever be usd in Europe; indeed it is properly adapted to a hot climate; I usd it to sleep in very often in the Islands and always found it far cooler than any English cloth, and that it much prevented perspiration or else, by drying it up immediately, the disagreeable sensation of it.

Having thus describd their manner of making the Cloth I shall proceed to their method of dying it. They have principaly two Colours in which
they excell, Red and Yellow; the first of these is most beautifull, I might almost venture to say a more delicate colour than any we have in Europe, approaching however nearest to Scarlet; the second is a good bright colour but of no particular excellence. They also upon some occasions dye brown and black but so seldom that I had not an opportunity during my stay to see the methods or learn the materials which they make use of; I shall therefore say no more of these Colours than that they were so indifferent in their qualities that they did not much raise my curiosity to enquire concerning them.

To begin then with the red, in favour of which I shall premise that I beleive no Voyager has past these seas but he has said something in praise of this colour, the brightness and elegance of which is so great that it cannot avoid being taken notice of by the slightest observer. This colour is made by the admixture of the Juices of two vegetables neither of which in their seperate state have the least tendency to the colour of Red, nor have any Parts of them that I have at least been able to observe any circumstance relating to them from whence any
one should be led to conclude that the colour of red was at all latent in them. They are *Ficus tinctoria* which is call'd by them *Matte* the same name as the colour and *Cordia Sebestena orientalis* call'd *Etou*; of these the fruits of the first and the leaves of the second are usd in the following manner.

The fruits which are about as large as a ronceval pea or very small Gooseberry, produce upon breaking off the stalk close to them each one drop of a milky liquor resembling the Juice of a fig tree in Europe, for indeed the tree itself is a kind of wild fig tree. This liquor the women collect, breaking off the footstalk and shaking the drop which hangs to the little fig into a small quantity of cocoa nut water: to sufficiently prepare a gill of Cocoa nut water will require 3 or 4 quarts of the little figs, tho I never could observe that they had any rule in Proportioning the quantity except observing the Cocoa nut water, which was to be of a Whey colour when a sufficient quantity of the Juice of the little figs was mixd among it. When this liquor is prepard the leaves of the *Etou* are brought which are well wetted in it, they are then laid upon a
Plantain leaf and the Women begin first gently to turn and shake them about; afterwards as they grow more and more flaccid by this operation to squeeze them a little, increasing the pressure gradually, all which is done merely to prevent the leaves from breaking; still as they become more flaccid and spongy they supply them with more of the juice. In about 5 minutes the Colour begins to appear on the Veins of the leaves of the Etou and in 10 or a little more all is finishd and ready for straining, at which time they press and squeeze the leaves as hard as they possibly can. The method of straining is this: they have for the purpose a large quantity of the fibres of a kind of Cyperus Grass (*Cyperus stupeus*) calld by them *Mooe*, which the boys prepare very nimbly by Drawing the stalks of it through their teeth or between two little sticks until all the green bark and the branny substance which lays between them is gone. In a covering of these fibres then they invelop the leaves and squeezing or wringing them strongly express the dye which turns out very little more in quantity than the liquor employd; this operation they repeat several times, soaking as often the leaves in the
dye and squeezing them dry again until they have sufficiently extracted all their virtue, when they throw away the remaining leaves keeping however the Möoo which serves them instead of a brush to lay the colour upon the Cloth. The receptacle used for the liquid dye is constantly a Plantain leaf, whether from any property it may have agreeable to the colour, or the great ease with which they are always got and the facility of dividing one and making of it many small cups in which the dye may be distributed to every one in company I do not know. Their method of laying it on the Cloth is this: they take it up in the fibres of the Möoo and rubbing that gently over the Cloth spread the outside of it with a thin coat of dye. This of the thick cloth, the thin they very seldom dye more than the edges of; some indeed I have seen dyed through as if it had been soaked in the dye, but had not near so elegant a colour as that on which a thin coat only was laid on the outside.

Though the Etou leaf is the most generally used and I believe produces the finest colour, yet there are several more which being mixed with the Juice of the little figs produce a red colour, as Tournefortia Sericea which they call Taheinoo; Convolvulus brasilienis.
From the use of these different plants or from different proportions of materials many varieties of the colour are observable among their cloths, some of which are very conspicuously superior to others.

When the women have been employed in dyeing cloth they industriously preserve the colour upon their fingers and nails upon which it shews with its greatest beauty. They look upon this as no small ornament and I have been sometimes inclined to believe that they even borrow the dye of each other merely for the purpose of dying their fingers; whether it is esteemed as a beauty, a mark of their housewifry in being able to dye, or their riches in having cloth to dye I know not.

Of what use this preparation may be of to my Countrymen either in itself or in any hints which may be drawn from an admixture of vegetable substances so totally different from any thing of the kind that is practis’d in Europe, I am not enough vers’d in Chymistry to be able to guess, I must however hope that it will be of some. The latent qualities of vegetables have already furnish’d our most valuable dyes; no one from an inspection of the Plants could guess that any colour was hid under the herbs of
Indigo, Woad, Dyers weed, or indeed the most of the Plants whose leaves are used in dying, and yet those latent qualifications have when discoverd produc’d Colours without which our dyers could hardly go on with their Trades.

The Painter whom I have with me tells me that the nearest imitation of the colour that he could make would be by mixing together vermilion and Carmine, but even that would not equal the delicacy of it tho a body colour, and the Indian only a stain in the way that the Indians use it. I can not say much for its standing: they commonly keep their cloth white till the very time when it is to be us’d and then dye it as if conscious that it would soon fade. I have however usd Cloth dy’d with it myself for a fortnight or three weeks, in which time it has very little alter’d itself and by that time the Cloth was pretty well wore. Of it I have also some now in chests which a month ago when I lookd into them had very little alter’d their colour; the admixture of fixing drugs would however certainly not a little conduce to its standing.

So much for their Red: their yellow though a good colour has certainly no particular excellence to recommend it in which it is superior to our known
Yellows: it is made of the bark of the Root of a shrub called by them *Nono* (*Morinda umbellata*) this they scrape into water and after it has soaked there a sufficient time strain the water and dip the cloth into it. The wood of the root is no doubt furnishd in some degree with the same property as the Bark but not having any vessels in which they can boil it it is useless to the inhabitants. The genus of Morinda seems worthy of being examind as to its propertys in dying; *Browne* in his hist of Jamaica mentions 3 species whose roots he says are usd to dye a brown colour, and Rumphius says of his *Bancudus angustifolia*, which is very nearly allied to our *Nono*, that it is usd by the inhabitants of the East Indian Islands as a fixing drug for the colour of red with which he says it particularly agrees.

They also dye Yellow with the fruits of a tree called by them *Tamanu* (*Calophyllum Inophyllum*) but their method I never had the fortune to see; it seems however to be chiefly esteemed by them for the smell which it gives to the cloth, a smell that is more agreeable to an Indian than a Europaean nose.

Besides their cloth the women make several kinds of matting which serves them to
sleep upon, and the finest for cloths: with the last they take much pains, especialy with that sort which is made of the Bark of the Tree calld by them *Poorou, Hibiscus tiliaceus*, of which I have seen matting almost as fine as coarse cloth. But the most beautifull sort, calld by them *Vanne*, which is white and extreemly glossy and shining is made of the leaves of a sort of *Pandanus* calld by them *Wharra*, of which we had not an opportunity of seing either flowers or fruit. The rest of their *Möeäs* as they call them which serve to set down or sleep upon are made of a variety of sorts of Rushes, grass &c: these they are extreemly nimble in making and indeed every thing which is platted, baskets of a thousand different patterns, some very neat &c. As for occasional Baskets or Paniers made of a Cocoa nut leaf, or the little Bonnets which they wear to shade the eyes from the sun of the same material, every one knows how to make them at once; as soon as the sun was pretty high the women who had been with us since morning sent generaly out for cocoa nut leaves of which they made such bonnets in a few minutes, which they threw away as soon as the sun became again low in the afternoon. These however serve merely for a shade, coverings to their heads they
have none except their hair for these bonnets or shades only fit round their heads not upon them.

Besides these things they make nets for fishing in the same manner as we do, Ropes of about an inch, and lines, of the Poorou; threads with which they sew together their canoes, and also belts, of the fibres of the Cocoa nut, platted either round or flat very neatly; all their twisting work they do upon their thighs in a manner very difficult to describe and indeed unnecessary, as no European can want to learn how to do an operation which his instruments will do for him so much faster than it possibly can be done by hand.

But of all the strings that they make none are so excellent as the fishing lines &c. which are made of the bark of a kind of frutescent nettle call'd by them Erowa (Urtica argentea) which grows in the mountains and is consequently rather scarce; of this they make the lines which are employ'd to take the briskest and most active fish as bonetos, Albecores &c. As I never made experiments with it I can only ascertain its strength by saying that it was infinitely stronger than silk lines which I had on board made by the best fishing shops in London, tho not so thick by almost half.
In every expedient for taking fish they are vastly ingenious. Their Seines, nets for fish to mesh themselves in &c. are exactly like ours: they strike fish with harpoons made of Cane and pointed with hard wood in a more dextrous manner than we can do with ours that are headed with Iron, for we who fasten lines to ours need only lodge them in the fish to secure it, while they on the other hand throwing theirs quite from them must either mortaly wound the fish or loose him. Their hooks indeed as they are not made of Iron must be very different from ours in construction. They [are] of two sorts, first that call'd by them *Witte witte* which is usd for towing, of which fig 1 is the profile and fig 2 the view of the
bottom part. The shank (a) is made of mother of Pearl the most glossy that can be got, the inside or naturaly bright side of which is put undermost as in fig 2; (b) is a tuft of white dogs or hogs hair which serves may be to imitate the tail of a fish. These hooks require no bait. They are usd with a fishing rod of Bamboo; the people who go out with them having found by the flights of birds which constantly attend shoals of Bonetos where they are, Paddle their Canoes as swift as they can across them and seldom fail to take some. This Indian invention seems far to exceed any thing of the kind which I have seen among Europaeans, and is certainly more successful than any artificial flying fish or other thing which
is generally used for the taking of Bonitos, so far it deserves imitation at any time when the taking of Bonitos is at all desirable.

The other sort of hooks which they have are made likewise of mother of Pearl or some hard shell, and as they can not make them bearded as our hooks they supply that fault by making the points turn much inwards as in the annexed figure; they have them of all sizes and catch with them all kinds of fish very successfully I believe. The manner of making them is very simple, every fisherman makes them for himself. The shell is first cut by the edge of another shell into square pieces; these are formed with files of Coral which work in a manner surprising to any one who does not know how sharp Corals are; a hole is then bored in the middle by a drill which is no more than any stone that may have a sharp corner in it tied to a handle of cane, which is turned in the hand like a Chocolate mill until the hole is made; the file then comes into the hole and completes the hook which is done in such a one as the figure shews.
in less than a quarter of an hour.

In their carpenters, joiners and stone cutters work &c. they are almost as little obligd to the use of tools as in making these hooks: an axe of Stone in the shape of an adze, a chisel or gouge made of a human bone, a file or rasp of Coral, skin of Sting rays, and coral sand to polish with, are a sufficient set of tools for building a house and furnishing it with boats, as well as for quarrying and squaring stones for the pavement of any thing which may require it in the neighbourhood. Their stone axes are made of a black stone not very hard but tolerably tough; they are of different sizes, some that are intended for felling weigh 3 or 4 Pounds, others which are usd only for carving not so many ounces. Whatever these tools want in goodness is made up by the industry of the people who use them. Felling a tree is their greatest labour, a large one requires many hands to assist and some days before it can be finishd, but when once it is down they manage it with far greater dexterity than is credible to an Europæan. If it is to be made into boards
they put wedges into it, and drive them with such dexterity (as they have told me - for I never saw it) that they divide it into slabs of 3 or 4 inches in thickness, seldom meeting with an accident if the tree is good. These slabs they very soon dubb down with their axes to any given thinness; in this work they certainly excell; indeed their tools are better adapt'd for it than any other performance; I have seen them dubb of the first rough coat of a plank at least as fast as one of our carpenters could have done it; and in hollowing, where they have liberty to raise large floors of the wood, they certainly work quicker, owing to the weight of their tools: those who are masters of this business, will take of a surprizing thin coat from a whole plank, without missing a stroke; they can also work upon a peice of wood of any shape as well as they can upon a flat one, for in making their canoes every peice is form'd first into its proper shape, bilging or flat: for as they never bend a Plank all the bilging peices must be shap’d by hand which is done intirely with axes. They have small axes for carving also but all their carvd work was so bad and in so very mean a taste that it scarce deservd that name.
Yet they love much to have carved work and figures stuck about their canoes, the great ones especially, which generally have a figure of a man at the head and another at the stern of them. Their marai’s also are ornamented with different kinds of figures, one sort of which represent many men standing on each other’s heads; they have also the figures of animals, and planks whose faces are carved in patterns of squares and circles &c. but every part of their carving is in an equally bad taste. All their work however acquires a certain neatness in the finishing for they polish every thing, even the side of a canoe or a post of a house, with coral sand rubbed on in the outer husk of a cocoa nut and rays skin, which makes them very smooth and neat.

Their boats all at least that I have seen of them may be divided into two general classes. The first which are called by the natives Ivahah are the only sort which are used at Otahite; they serve for fishing, and for short trips to sea but do not at all seem calculated for long ones. The others again which are called Pahei and are used by the inhabitants of the Societies Isles viz. Ulhietea, Bola Bola, Huaheine &c. are rather too clumsy for fishing,
for which reason the inhabitants of those Isles have also *Ivahas* but are much better adapted for long voyages than the others. The figure below gives a section of both the kinds of which fig. I is the *Ivahah*

![Diagram of Ivahah and Pahei boats]

and fig. II the *Pahei*. To begin then with the *Ivahah* these boats differ very much in length, I have measured them from 10 ft to 72, but by no means proportionally in breadth, for that of 10 feet was about 1 in breadth and that of 72 scarce 2, nor is their height increased in a much greater proportion. They may be subdivided into three sorts, the fighting *ivahah*, the common sailing or fishing *ivahah*, and the traveling *ivahah*. The fighting *Ivahah* is by far the largest; the head and stern of these boats are considerably raised above the body of them in a semicircular form, the latter especially which is 17 or 18 feet in height when the body of the boat is scarcely 3. These boats never go to sea singly: two are always fastened together side by side at the distance of about 2 feet by strong poles of wood [which]
go across them, and upon them is built a stage in the fore part, about 10 or 12 feet long and a little broader than the two boats; this is supported by pillars about 6 feet high and upon it stand the people who fight with slings, spears &c; below are the rowers who are much less engagd in the battle on account of their confind situation but who receive the wounded from the stage and furnish fresh men to ascend in their room. This much from description for I never saw any of their battles. The Sailing and fishing *Ivahahs* vary in size from about 40 feet in lengh to the smallest I have mentiond, but those which are under 25 feet in lengh seldom or never carry sail; their Sterns only are raisd and those not above 4 or 5 feet; their heads are quite flat and have a flat board projecting forwards beyond them about 4 feet. Those which I have calld traveling *Ivahas* differ from these in nothing but their being constantly joind 2 and 2 together in the same manner as the fighting ones, and having a small neat house 5 or 6 feet broad and 7 or 8 long fastned upon the fore part of them, in which the principal people, who use them very much, set when they are carried
from place to place. The sailing *Ivahas* have also sometimes this house upon them when they are joind two and two together, which is but seldom however; indeed the difference between these two consists almost intirely in the rigging, and I have divided them into two more because they are generally seen employd in very different occupations than from any real difference in their built. All *Ivahas* however agree in that they are built wall sided and with flat bottoms, in which they differ from the *Pahie* fig. II: whose sides are built rounding out, or bilging as it is call'd, and her bottom sharp which answers in some measure instead of a Keel.

These *Pahies* differ very much in size. I have seen them from 60 to 30 feet in length but like the *Ivahas* they are very narrow in proportion to their length: one that I measured was 51 feet in length, in breadth at the top (a) only 1 1/2 ft and in the bilge (b) 3 feet, which is about the general proportion; their round sides however make them capable of carrying much greater burthens and being much more safe sea boats, in consequence of which they are usd merely for fighting and making long voyages; for the purposes of fishing and traveling along shore the natives of
the Islands where these are chiefly used have *Ivahas*. The fighting *Pahies* which are the largest are fitted in the same manner as the fighting *Ivahas*, only as they carry far greater burthens the stages are proportionally larger. The Sailing ones are most generally fastned two and two together: for this purpose the middling sized ones are said to be the best and least liable to accidents in stormy weather; in these if we may credit the reports of the inhabitants they make very long voyages, often remaining out from home several months, visiting in that time many different Islands of which they repeated to us the names of near a hundred. They cannot however remain at sea above a fortnight or 20 days tho they live as sparingly as possible, for want of proper provisions and places to put them in safe, as well as water of which however they carry a tolerable stock in hollow Bamboes.

All these embarkations which indeed are all that I saw us’d in any of the Islands are disproportionally narrow in respect to their length, Which causes them to be so very Easily overset that not even the Indians dare venture in them till they are fitted with a contrivance to prevent this inconvenience;
which is done either by fastening two together side by side as has been before describd, in which case one supports the other and they become the most steady Vehicle that can be imagin’d, or if one of them is to go out single a log of wood fas’tned to two poles which are tied across the boat serves to balance it tolerably, tho not so securely but that I have seen the Indians overset them very often. This is upon the same principles as that usd in the flying Proa of the Ladrone Isles describd in Ld Ansons voyage, where it is calld an outrigger; indeed the vessels themselves enough resemble the flying Proa to make it appear at least possible that either that is a very artfull improvement of these or these a very awkward imitation of that.

These boats are paddled along with large paddles which have a long handle and a flat blade resembling more than any thing I recollect a Bakers peel; of these generaly every one in the boat has one except those who set under the houses and with these they push themselves on pretty fast through the water. They are so leaky however that one person at least is employd almost constantly in throwing
out the water. The only thing in which they excell is landing in a surf, for by reason of their great length and high sterns they would land dry in a surf when our boats could scarcely land at all, and in the same manner put off from the shore as I have often experienc’d.

When fitted for sailing they have either one or two Masts fitted to a frame which is above the canoe; they are made of a single stick; in one that I measurd of 32 feet in length the mast was 25 ft high which seems to me to be about the common proportion. To this is fastned a sail of about one third longer but narrow, of a triangular shape, pointed at the top and the outside curvd; it is borderd all round with a frame of wood and has no contrivance either for reefing or furling, so that in case of bad weather it must be intirely cut away, but I fancy in these moderate climates they are seldom brought to this necessity; the material of which it is made is universaly Matting. With these sails their Canoes go at a very good rate and lay very near the wind, probably on account of their sail being borderd with
wood which makes them stand better than any bowlines could possible do. On the top of this sail they carry an ornament which in taste resembles much our Pennants, it is made of feathers and reaches down to the very water so that when blown out by the wind it makes no inconsiderable shew. They are indeed fond of ornaments in all parts of their boats; they commonly in the good ones have a figure at the stern; in the Paheis which rise rounding both at the head and stern they have a figure at both, and the smaller ivahas have commonly a small carvd pillar standing upon their stern.

Considering these people as intirely destitute of Iron they build these Canoes very well. Of the Ivahas the foundation is always the trunks of one or more trees, hollowd out; the ends of these are Slopd off, and sewd together with the fibres of the Husk of the cocoanut; the sides of them are then raisd with plank, sewd together in the same manner. The Paheis as they are much better embarkations so they are built in a more ingenious manner. Like the others they are laid upon a long keel which however is not above 4 or 5 inches deep; upon this they raise with two ranges of Plank each of which is about
18 inches high and about 4 feet in length. Such a number of pieces must necessarily be framed and fitted together before they are sewed and this they do very dexterously, supporting the Keel by ropes made fast to the top of the house under which they work and then each plank by a stantion: so that the canoe is compleatly put together before any one part of her is fastned to that which is next to it, and in this manner supported till the sewing is compleated. This however soon rots in the salt water: it must be renewd once a year at least, in doing which the canoe is intirely taken to peices and every plank examind, by which means they are always in good repair. The best of them are however very leaky for as they use no calking the water must run in at every hole through which the sewing is past; this however is no great inconvenience to them who live in a climate where the water is always warm, and go barefoot.

For the convenience of keeping these Paheis dry we saw in the Islands where they are usd a peculiar sort of houses which were built on purpose for their reception, and put to no use but
that; they are built of Poles stuck upright in the ground and tied together at the top so that they make a kind of Gothick arch; the sides of these are compleatly coverd with Thatch down to the ground but the ends are left open. One of these I measurd, 50 paces in lengh, 10 in breadth and 24 feet high, and this was of the midling size.

The people Excell much in predicting the weather, a circumstance of great use to them in their short voyages from Island to Island. They have many various ways of doing this but one only that I know of which I never heard of being practisd by Europaeans, that is foretelling the quarter of the heavens from whence the wind shall blow by observing the Milky Way, which is generaly bent in an arch either one way or the other: this arch they conceive as already acted upon by the wind, which is the cause of its curving, and say that if the same curve continues a whole night the wind predicted by it seldom fails to come some time in the next day; and in this as well as their other predictions we found them indeed not infallible but far more clever than Europaeans.

In their longer Voyages they steer in the day
by the Sun and in the night by the Stars. Of these they know a very large part by their Names and the clever ones among them will tell in what part of the heavens they are to be seen in any month when they are above their horizon; they know also the time of their annual appearing and disappearing to a great nicety, far greater than would be easily believed by an European astronomer.

For their Method of dividing time I was not able to get a compleat Idea of it, I shall however set down what little I know. In speaking of Time either past or to come they never use any term but Moons, of which they count 13 and then begin again: this of itself sufficiently shews that they have an Idea of the Solar year but how they manage to make their 13 months agree with it I never could find out: that they do however I believe because in mentioning the names of months they very frequently told us the fruits that would be in season in each of them, the sort of weather that was usual in them &c. They have also a name for the 13 months collectively but they never use it in speaking of time, they use it only in explaining the mysteries of their religion: in their metaphorical way they say that the Year *Tettowmatatayo* was
the daughter of their chief Divinity *Taroataihetoomoo* and that she in process of time brought forth the months, who in their turn produc’d the days, of which they count 29 in every month including one on which the moon is invisible. Every one of these has its respective name and is again subdivided into 12 parts containing about 2 hours each, 6 for the day and 6 for the night, each of which has likewise its respective name; in the day time they guess the divisions of these parts very well, but in the night tho they have the same number of divisions as in the day seem very little able to tell at any time which of them it then is, except the cleverer among them who know the stars.

In counting they proceed from 1 to 10, having a different name for each number; from thence they say one more, 2 more &c. till the number 20, which after being call’d in the general count 10 more acquires a new name, as we say a score; by these scores they count till they have got 10 of them, which again acquires a new name, 200; these again are counted till they get 10 of them, 2000; which is the largest denomination I have ever heard them make use of and I suppose is as large as they can ever have occasion
for, as they can count 10 of these 20,000 without any new term.

In measures of space they are very poor, indeed one fathom and ten fathoms are the only terms I have heard among them; by these they convey the size of any thing as a house, a boat, depth of the sea &c; but when they speak of distances from one place to another they have no way but time of making themselves understood, but by the number of days it takes them in their canoes to go the distance.

Their Language appeard to me to be very soft and tuneable, it abounds much with vowels and was very easily pronounc’d by us when ours was to them absolutely impracticable. I shall instance particularly my own name which I took much pains to teach them and they to learn: after three days fruitless trials I was forc’d to select from their many attempts the word Tabáne, the only one I had been able to get from them that had the least similitude to it. Again Spanish or Italian words they pronounced with ease provided they ended with a vowel,
for few or none of theirs end with a consonant.

I cannot say that I am enough acquainted with it to pronounce whether or not it is copious. In one respect however it is beyond measure inferior to all European languages, which is its almost total want of inflexion both of Nouns and verbs, few or none of the former having more than one Case or the latter one tense. Notwithstanding this want however we found it very easy to make ourselves understood in matters of common necessaries, howsoever paradoxical that may appear to an European.

The[y] have certain Suffixa and make very frequent use of them, which puzzled us at first very much tho they are but few in number. An instance or two may be necessary to make myself understood as they do not exist in any modern European language. One asks another Harre hea? where are you going? the other answers Ivahinera, to my Wives; on Which the first questioning him still farther Ivahinera? to your wives do you say? is answered Ivahinereia, Yes I am going to my wives. Here the suffixa era
and eia save several words to both parties.

From the vocabularies given in Le Mair’s voyage (See *Histoire des navigations aux Terres australes* Tom 1. p.410) it appears clearly that the Languages given there as those of the Isles of Solomon and the Isle of Cocos are radically the identical same languages as those we met with, the greatest number of words differing in little but the greater number of consonants. The languages of New Guinea and Moyse Isle have also many words Radically the same, particularly their Numbers, tho they are so obscurd by a multitude of consonants that it is scarce possible that they should be found out by any but one in some measure acquainted with one of the Languages; for instance

New Guinea *Hissou* fish, is found to be the same as the Otahite *Eia* by the medium of *Ica* of the Isles of Solomon; *Talingan* ears, in Otahite *Terrea*; *Limang* a hand, *Lima* or *Rima*; *Paring* cheeks *Paparea*; Isle of Moyse *Sou Sou* Breasts, *Eu; Mattanga* Eyes, *Mata*. They callld us says the author *Tata*, which in Otahite signifies men in general; besides several
That the people who inhabit this numerous range of Isles should have originally come from one and the same place and brought with the same numbers and Language, which latter especially have remaind to this time not materially alterd, is in my opinion not at all past beleif, but that the Numbers of the Island of Madagascar should be the same as all these is almost if not quite incredible. I shall give them from a book calld *a Collection of voyages by the Duch East India Company* Lond. 1703. p. 116, where supposing the author Who speaks of ten numbers and has only nine to have lost the fifth their similarity is beyond dispute.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Madagascar</th>
<th>Otahite</th>
<th>Cocos Isle</th>
<th>New Guinea</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Issa</td>
<td>Tahie</td>
<td>Taci</td>
<td>Tika</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rove</td>
<td>Rua</td>
<td>Loua</td>
<td>Roa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tello</td>
<td>Torou</td>
<td>Tolou</td>
<td>Tola</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Effat</td>
<td>Hea</td>
<td>Fa</td>
<td>Fatta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enning</td>
<td>Whene</td>
<td>Houno</td>
<td>Wamma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fruto</td>
<td>Heta</td>
<td>Fitou</td>
<td>Fita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wedo</td>
<td>Whearu</td>
<td>Walou</td>
<td>Walla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sidai</td>
<td>Heva</td>
<td>Ywou</td>
<td>Siwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scula</td>
<td>Ahourou</td>
<td>Ongefoula</td>
<td>Sangafoula</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It must be rememberd however that the author of this voyage during the course of it touchd at Java and several more of the East Indian Isles
as well as Madagascar, so that supposing by any misarangement of his papers that he has given the numerals of some of those Isles for those of Madagascar our wonder will be much diminish'd; for after having tracd them from Otahite to New Guinea it should seem not very wonderfull to carry them a little farther to the East Indian Isles, which from their situation seem not unlikely to be the place from whence our Islanders originaly have come; but I shall wave saying any more on this subject till I have had an opportunity of myself seeing the customs &c of the Javans, which this Voyage will in all probab[il]lity give me an opportunity of doing.

All the Isles I was upon agreed perfectly as far as I could understand them; the people of Ulietea only chang’d the t of the Otahiteans to a k, calling Tata which signifies a man or woman Kaka, a circumstance which made their Language much less soft. The people of Ohiteroa as far as I could understand their words which were only shouted out to us seemd to do the same thing, and add many more consonants
and harshness’s which made their Language still more untuneable. I shall give a few of their words from whence an Idea may be got of their language.

| Eupo the Head       | Booa a hog         |
| Ahewh the Nose      | Moa fowl           |
| Roourou the Hair    | Eurèe a dog        |
| Outou the mouth     | Èùre-Èùre Iron     |
| Nihëo the teeth     | Ooroo Bread fruit  |
| Arrero the Tongue   | Hearee Cocoa nuts  |
| Meu-eumi the Beard  | Mia Bananes        |
| Tiarraboa the throat| Vaèe wild Plantanes|
| Tuamo the shoulders | Poe Beads          |
| Tuah the Back       | Poe Matawewwe Pearl|
| Öima the Breast     | ahow a garment     |
| Eu the Nipples      | Avee a fruit like apples |
| Oboo the Belly      | ahee another like Chestnuts |
| Rema the arm        | Ewharre a house    |
| Aporema the hand    | Whennua a high Island |
| Manneow the fingers | Motu a low one     |
| Mieu the Nails      | Toto Blood         |
| Towhe the Buttocks  | Aeve bone          |
| Hoowwhah the thighs | Äeo flesh          |
| Avai the legs       | Mäe fat            |
| Tapoa the feet      | Huru-huru Hair     |
**August 1769  Manners & customs of S. Sea Islands  410**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Pidgin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Eraou a tree</td>
<td>Miti good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ama a Branch</td>
<td>Eno Bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tiâle a flower</td>
<td>A Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Huero fruit</td>
<td>ima no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Etummo the stem</td>
<td>Paree ugly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aaa the root</td>
<td>Pororee Hungry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eiherre herbaceous plants</td>
<td>Pia Full</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oooopa a pidgeon</td>
<td>Tuhea Lean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avigne a parroquet</td>
<td>Timahah Heavy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-a another species</td>
<td>Mama Light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mannu a Bird</td>
<td>Poto short</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mora a duck</td>
<td>Roa tall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mattow a fish hook</td>
<td>Nenenne sweet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toura a rope</td>
<td>Mala-mala bitter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mow a shark</td>
<td>Whanno to go Far</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mahimahi a Dolphin</td>
<td>Harre to go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mattera a fishing rod</td>
<td>Arrea to stay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eupea a Net</td>
<td>Enoho to remain or tarry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mahanna the Sun</td>
<td>Rohe-rohe to be tird</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malama the Moon</td>
<td>Maa to Eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whettu a star</td>
<td>Inoo to Drink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whettu-euphe a Comet</td>
<td>Ete to understand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Erai the sky</td>
<td>Wariddo to steal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eatta a cloud</td>
<td>Waridde to be angry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Teparahie to beat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Among people whose dyet is so simple and plain
distempers cannot be suppos’d to be so frequent as
among us Europeans, we observ’d but few and those
chiefly cutaneous as erysipelas and scaly eruptions
upon the skin. This last was almost if not quite
advanc’d to Leprosy; the people who were in that
state were secluded from society, living by themselves
each in a small house built in some unfrequented place
where they were daily supply’d with provisions;
whither these had any hopes of releif or were doom’d
in this manner to languish out a life of solitude we did
not learn. Some but very few had ulcers upon
different parts of their bodies, most of which lookd
very virulent; the people who were afflicted with them
did not however seem much to regard them, leaving
them intirely without any application even to keep off
the flies. Acute distempers no doubt they have but
while we stayd upon the Island they were very
uncommon, possibly in the rainy season they are more
frequent. Among the numerous acquaintance I had
upon the Island only one was taken ill during our stay;
her I visited.
and found her as is their custom left by everybody but her three children who sat by her; her complaint was cholick which did not appear to me at all violent; I askd her what medicines she took, she told me none and that she depended intirely upon the preist who had been trying to free her from her distemper by his prayers and ceremonies, which she said he would repeat till she was well, shewing me at the same time Branches of the *Thespesia Populnea* which he had left with her. After this I left her and, whether by the ceremonies of the preist or the goodness of her constitution I know not, in three days time she came down to our tents compleatly recoverd.

I never hapned to be present when their preists performd their ceremonies for the cure of sick people, but one of our gentlemen who was informed me that it consisted in nothing but the preist repeating certain fixd sentences during which time he platted the leaves of the Cocoa nut tree into different figures, neat enough, some of which he fas[t]ned to the fingers and toes of the sick man, who [was during] the time uncoverd as in respect to the prayers, the whole ceremony almost exactly resembling
their method of praying at the Marai’s which I shall by and by describe. That they have however besides these operations of Preistcraft a knowledge of Medecine not to be despis’d we were abundantly convinc’d of by the following fact. The Spanish ship which visited this Island about 17 months before we came brought with it the Venereal disease and that in a most virulent degree; these people have often describd to me in most pathetick terms the shocking symptoms with which the poor wretches were afflicted who were first seizd by this filthy distemper, which in their Language they call by a name of Nearly the same but a more extensive signification than rotteness in English; their hair and nails dropd off and their very flesh rotted from their bones so that they dyed miserable objects shunnd by their nearest relations, fearfull least they themselves might be tainted with the dreadfull Contagion. Yet shocking as these symptoms were they had even at the time when we came there found a method of cure and that I should suppose not of a despicable nature, as we saw no one during the whole of our stay in whom the
distemper arrivd to any height and some who went from us for their cure returnd in a short time perfectly recover’d. When first we discoverd this distemper among these people we were much alarmd, fearing that we ourselves had notwithstanding our many precautions brought it among them; but upon strict inquiry we found that one of our people had been infected within 5 days after our arrival and when we a little better understood the Language the natives explaind the matter fully to us.

That they have skillfull Chirurgeons among them we easily gatherd from the dreadfull scars of wounds which we frequently saw that had been cur’d, some of which were far greater than any I have seen anywhere else, and these were made by stones which these people know how to throw with slings with great dexterity and force. One man I particularly recolect whose face was almost intirely destroyd, his nose one cheek and one eye being beat in and all the bones there flatted down so that the hollow would receive a mans fist, yet this dreadfull wound was heald clean without any ulcer remaining. Tupia who has had several wound[s]
has had one made by a spear of his country headed with the bone of a stingrays tail which has pierced quite through his body, entering at his back and coming out just under his breast, yet this has been so well curd that the remaining scar is as smooth and as small as any I have seen from the cures of our best European surgeons.

Vulnerary herbs they have many, nor do they seem at all nice in the choice of them so they have plenty of such herbaceous plants as yield mild juices devoid of all acridity, such as chickweed groundsell &c. in England. With these they make fomentations which they frequently apply to the wound, taking care to cleanse it as often as possible, the patient all the time observing great abstinence; by this method if they have told us true their wounds are curd in a very short time. As for their medicines we learn’d but little concerning them; they told us indeed freely that such and such plants were good for such and such distempers, but it required a much better knowledge of the language than we were able to obtain during our short stay to understand the method of application even of those they
attempted to explain to us.

Their Manner of Disposing of their dead as well as the ceremonies relating to their mourning for them are so remarkable that they deserve a very particular description. As soon as any one is dead the House is immediately filld with their relations who bewail their Loss with Loud lamentations, especialy those who are the farthest removd in blood from or who profess the least greif for the deceasd; the nearer relations and those who are reaily affected spend their time in more silent sorrow, while the rest join in Chorus’s of Greif at certain intervals between which they laugh, talk and gossip as if totaly unconcernd; this lasts till day light on the Morn after their meeting, when the body being shrowded in their cloth is laid upon a kind of Bier on which it can conveniently be carried upon mens shoulders. The priests office now begins; he prays over the body, repeating his sentences, and orders it to be carried down to the sea side; here his prayers are renewd, the Corps is brought down near the waters edge and he sprinkles water towards but not upon it, it is then removd
40 or 50 yards from the sea and soon after brought back and this ceremony repeated which is done several times. In the mean time a house has been built and a small space of ground round it raild in; in the center of this house are posts set up for the supporting of the bier which as soon as the ceremonies are finishd is brought here and set upon them, where the Corps is to remain and putrifie in state to the no small disgust of every one whose business requires them to pass near it.

These houses of corruption, *Tu papow* as they are calld here, are of a size proportionate to the rank of the Person containd in them; if he is poor they merely cover the bier and these generaly have no railing round them, the largest I ever saw was 11 yards in lengh. They are ornamented according to the abilities and inclinations of the surviving relations, who never fail to lay a profusion of Good Cloth about the body and often almost cover the outside of the house; the two ends which are open are also hung with kind of garlands of the Fruits of the Palm nut (*Pandanus*)
Cocoa nut leaves knotted by the Priests in kind of Mystick knots, and a plant callld by them *Ethee no ta Marai* (*terminalia*) which is particularly consecrated to funerals. Near the House is also laid fish, fruits and cocoa nut or Common water or such provisions as can well be spard, not that they suppose the dead any way capable of eating this provision, but think that if any of their gods should descend upon that place and being hungry find that these preparations had been neglected he would infalibly satisfy his appetite with the flesh of the dead corps.

No sooner is the corps fixd up within the House or *ewhatta* as they call it than the ceremony of mourning begins again. The women (for the men seem to think lamentations below their dignity) assemble Led on by the nearest relation, who walking up to the door of the House swimming almost in tears strikes a sharks tooth several times into the crown of her head, on which a large effusion of blood flows, which is carefully caught in their linnen and thrown under the Bier. Her example is imitated by the rest of the women and this ceremony
is repeated at the interval of 2 or 3 days as long as the women chuse or can keep it up, the nearest relation thinking it her duty to Continue it longer than any one else. Besides the blood which they beleive to be an acceptable present to the deceasd, whose soule they beleive to exist and hover about the place where the body lays observing the actions of the survivors, they throw in Cloths wet with tears, of which all that are shed are carefully preservd for that purpose, and the younger people cut off their hair either all or in part and throw that also under the Bier.

When these ceremonies have been performd for two or three days the men, who till now seemd to be intirely insensible of their loss, begin their part which the Nearest relations take in turns. They dress themselves in a dress so extrordinary that I question whether words can give a tolerable Idea of it, I therefore refer intirely to the anned figure. In this dress they patrole the woods early in the morn and late at night, preceeded by 2 or 3 boys who have nothing upon them but a small peice of
Cloth round their wrists and are smutted all over with Charcoal; these sable emissaries run about their principal in all directions as if in pursuit of people on whom he may vent the rage inspir'd by his sorrow, which he does most unmercifully if he catches any body, cutting them with his stick the edge of which is set with sharks teeth, but this rarely or never happens for no sooner does this figure appear than every one who see either him or his emissaries fly inspir'd with a sort of religious awe, fly with the utmost speed, hiding wherever they think themselves the most safe but by all means quitting their Houses if they lie even near the path of this dreadfull apparition.

These ceremonies continue for 5 moons decreasing however in frequency very much towards the latter part of that time. The body is then taken down from the ewhatta, the bones washd and scrapd very clean, and burried according to the rank of the person either within or without
some one of their Marais or places of publick worship; and if it is one of their Earees or cheifs his Scull is preservd and being wrappd up in fine Cloth is plac’d in a kind of case made for that purpose which stands in the marai. The mourning then ceases unless some of the women who find themselves more than commonly afflicted by the Loss repeat the ceremony of Poopooing or bleeding themselves in the head, which they do at any time or in any place where they happen to be when the whim takes them.

The ceremonies however are far from Ceasing at this time. Frequent prayers are to be said by the preist and frequent offerings made for the benefit of the deceasd, or more properly for that of the Preists who are well paid for their prayers by the surviving relations. During this ceremony Emblematical devices are made use of: a young plantain tree signifies the Deceased and a bunch of feathers the Deity invokd; opposite to this the preist places himself often attended by relations of the deceasd.
and always furnish’d with a small offering of some kind of Eatables intended for the God; he begins by addressing the God by a set form of sentences and during the time he repeats them employs himself in weaving Cocoa nut leaves into different forms, all which he disposes upon the Grave where the bones have been deposited; the Deity is then addressed by a shrill scritch usd only on that occasion and the offering presented to his representative, the little tuft of feathers, which after this is removd and every thing else left in statu quo, to the no small Emolument of the Rats who quickly devour the offering.

Religion has been in ages, is still in all Countreys Cloak’d in mysteries unexplicable to human understanding. In the South Sea Islands it has still another disadvantage to present to any one who has a desire to investigate it - the Language in which it is conveyd, at least many words of it, are different from those usd in common conversation, so that tho Tupia often shewd the greatest desire to instruct us in it
he found it almost impossible; in short it is only needfull to remember how difficult it would be to reconcile the apparent inconsistencies of our own religion to the faith of an infidel, and to recolect how many excellent discourses are daily read to instruct even us in the faith which we profess, as articles of excuse in my favour when I declare that I know less of the religion of these people than of any other part of their policy. What I do know however I shall here write down wishing that inconsistencies may not appear to the eye of the candid reader as absurdities.

This Universe and its marvelous parts must strike the most stupid with a desire of knowing from whence themselves and it were producd. Their Preists however have not Ideas sufficiently enlarg’d to adopt that of Creation: that this world should have been originaly created from nothing far surpasses their comprehension. They observd however that every animal and every plant producd new ones by procreation and adopted the Idea; hence it is necessary to suppose two original beings one of whom they call Ettoomoo and the other which they say was a rock.
Tepapa; these at some very remote period of time, and by the common means allowed to us males and females their children, begat all that is seen or known of by us; some things however they imagine have increased among themselves, as the Stars, the different species of plants, and even the different divisions of Time; the Years say they produced the Months who intermingling with each other produced the days.

The First man say they was the Issue of a Connection between two of their inferior deities or Eatuas who at that time inhabited the Earth. He was when first born round like a ball but his mother with great care drew out each Limb and formed him as we now are, after which he was Calld Eothe which signifies finished. When he arrived at maturity the Stings of nature made him very desirous of Excercising those faculties with which the males of all animals are indued; his mother was the only female he could find and consequently the Object of his attempts; ignorant however what part of her he was in search of he made several
unsuccessfull efforts, at Last however chance leading him right he begat a daughter whom also he compressed and begat another, nor could for several generations have one son; at last however he had one who by the assistance of his many Sisters peopled this world and is the ancestor of us all.

Their Gods are numerous; they are divided into two Classes, the Greater and the Lesser Gods and of each Class are some of Both Sexes. The cheif of all is Tarroati’ettoomoo the procreator of all things whom they emphaticaly stile the Causer of Earthquakes; his Son Tane was however much more generaly calld upon as suppose to be the more active deity. The Men worshipd the male Gods and the Women the Females, the Men however supply the office of Preist for both sexes.

They beleive in a heaven and a hell, the first they call Tairua l’orai the other Tiahoboo. Heaven they describe as a place of Great happines and hell is only a place enjoying less of the luxuries of life; to this they say that the souls of the
interior people go after death and those of the cheifs and rich men to the other. This is one of the strongest instances to shew that their religion is totally independent of Morality: no actions regarding their neighbours are supposd to come at all under the Cognizance of the Deity, a humble regard only is to be shewn him and his assistance askd on all occasions with much Ceremony and some sacrafice, from whence are derivd the Perquisites of the Preists.

The *Tahowa* or Preist is here a hereditary Character. They are numerous and all ranks of People have preists among them, the cheif is generally however the younger brother of some very Good Family and is respected in a degree next to their kings. All ranks of preists are commonly more learned than the laity; their learning consists chiefly in knowing well the names and ranks of the different *Eatua* or divinities, the origin of the universe and all its parts &c; these things have been handed down to them in set sentences of which those who are clever can repeat an almost infinite number, in doing
in which few words occur the same as those used in common conversation, which greatly increased the difficulty we found in gaining a knowledge of their Theology.

Besides religion the Practise of Physick and the knowledge of Navigation and Astronomy is in the Possession of the Preists. The name indeed of preist, Tahowa, signifies a Man of Knowledge, so that even here the Preists Monopolize the greatest part of the learning of the Countrey in much the same manner as they formerly did in Europe; the practise of which gains them profit as well as respect each in his particular order, for each order has preists of its own nor will the preists of the Manahounies do any thing for a Toutou who is below them in rank.

Marriage is [in] these Islands no more than an agreement between the man and the woman totally independent of the preist, it is in general I believe pretty well kept unless they agree to separate, which is done
with as little trouble as they came together. Few people however enter this state but rather chuse freedom in their Amours, tho bought at the inhuman expence of mur[d](th)ering their children, whose fate is in that case entirely dependant on the father; who if he does not chuse to acknowledge both them and the woman and engage to contribute his part towards their support, orders them to be strangled which is instantly put in execution.

If our preists have excelld theirs in persuading us that the Sexes can not come lawfully together without having bought their benediction, they have done it by intermingling it so far with religion that the fear of punishment from above secures their power over us; but these untaught parsons have securd to themselves the profit of two operations without being driven to the necessity of so severe a penalty on the refusal, viz. Tattowing or painting their bodies and Circumsizing. Neither of these can be done
by any but preists, and as the highest degree of shame follows the wanting either the people are as much necessitated to make use of them as if bound by the highest ties of Religion, of which both customs are totaly independent. For the first they give no reason but that their ancestors did the same, for the other Cleanliness in hot climates always will be a sufficient reason. For both these operations they are paid by every one according to his abilities in the same manner as weddings Christnings &c &c. are paid for in Europe.

Their places of publick worship, which they call Marai, are square enclosures of very different sizes, from 10 to 100 yards in diameter; at one end of these is a heap or built up pile of stones near which the bones of the principal people are interrd, those of their dependants laying all round on the outside of the wall. Near or in these enclosures are often placd planks carvd into different figures and very frequently images of many men standing
on each others heads; these however are in no degree the objects of adoration, every prayer and sacrifice being here offerd to the Invisible deities.

Near or even within the Marai are one or more large altars raisd upon high posts 10 or 12 feet above the ground which are called Whatterow: on these are laid the offerings, Hogs, dogs, fowls, fruits or what ever else the piety or superfluity of the owner thinks proper to dedicate to the gods.

Both these places are reverenced in the highest degree, no man aproaches them without taking his Cloths from off his shoulders and no woman is on any account permitted to enter them. The women however have Marais of their own where they worship and sacrifice to their Godesses.

Of these Marais each family of consequence has one which serves him and his dependants; as each family values itself
upon its antiquity so are these esteemd. In the Society Isles especialy Ulhietea were some of great antiquity particularly that of Tapodeboatea; the building of these is rough and coarse but the stones of which they are composd immensely large. At Otahite again where either from frequent wars or other accidents many of the most ancient families are extinct they have tried to make them as elegant and expensive as possible, of which sort is that of Oamo describd in the Journal of going round the Island.

Besides their Gods each Island has a Bird to which the Title of Eatua or God is given, for instance Ulietea has the Heron and Bola Bola a kind of Kingfisher; these birds are held in high respect and by no means killd or molested. They are thought to be givers of Good or Bad fortune but no kind of Worship is offerd to them.

Tho I dare not assert that these people, to whom the art of writing and consequently
of Recording Laws &c. is totally unknown, live under
a regular form of Government, Yet the Subordination
which takes place among them very much resembles
the early state of the feudal laws by which our
Ancestors were so long governed, a System evidently
formed to secure the Licentious Liberty of a few while
the Greater part of the Society are unalterably
immersed in the most abject Slavery.

Their Orders are *Earee ra hie* which answers to King;
*Earee*, Baron; *Manahouni*, Vassal; and *Toutou*,
Villain. The *Earee ra hie* is always the head of the
Best family in the country; to him great respect is
paid by all ranks but in Power he seemed to us inferior
to several of the Principal *Earees*, nor indeed did he
once appear in the transacting of any part of our
business. Next to him in Rank are the *Earees*, each of
whom hold one or more of the Districts into which the
Island is divided (in Otahite there may be about 100 such districts); which are by the Earees parcelld out to the Manahounies, who cultivate each his part and for the use of it owe their Cheif service when calld upon and provisions, especialy when he travels, which he often does accompanied by many of his freinds and their families often amounting to near 100 principals beside their attendants. Inferiour to the Manahounes are the toutous who are upon almost the same footing as the Slaves in the East indian Islands, only that they never appeard to us transferrable from one to the other; these do all kinds of Laborious work, till the land, fetch wood and water, dress the victuals, under the direction however of the Mistris of the family, catch fish &c. Besides these are the two classes of Erate and Towha which seem to answer to Yeoman and Gentleman as they came between Earee and Manahouni; but as I was not acquainted
with the existence of these classes during our stay on the Island I know little of their real situation.

Each of the *Earees* kept a kind of Court and had a large attendance chiefly of the Younger brothers of their own family and of other *Earees*; among these were different officers of the Court, as *Heewa no t’Earee Whanno no t’Earee*, who were sometimes sent to us upon business. Of all these Courts Dootahah’s was the most splendid, indeed we were almost inclined to believe that he acted as Locum tenens for *Otou the Earee rahie*, his nephew, as he livd upon an estate belonging to him and we never could hear that he had any other publick place of residence.

The *Earees* or rather the districts which they Possess are obligd in time of a general attack to furnish each their Quota of soldiers
for the service of the Publick. Those of the Principal
districts which Tupia recolected when added together
amounted to 6680 men to which army it is probable
that the small Quotas of the rest would not make any
great addition.

Besides these publick wars, which are to be headed by
the *Earee ra hie*, any private difference between two
*Earees* is decided by their own people without at all
disturbing the tranquility of the Publick. Their
weapons are Slings which they use with great
dexterity, pikes headed with the stings of sting Rays,
and Clubbs of 6 or 7 feet long made of a very heavy
and hard wood. With these they fight by their own
account very obstinately, which appears the more
probable as the Conquerors give no Quarter to Man
Woman or Child who is unfortunate enough to fall into
their hands during or for some hours after the Battle,
that is till their Passion is subsided.

Otahtie at the time of Our being there was divided into two Kingdoms, Oporeonoo the larger and Tiarrebo the smaller. Each had its separate king &c. &c. who were at Peace; the king of Oporeonoo however called himself king of both in just the same manner as most European Monarchs usurp the title of king over kingdoms over which they have not the least influence.

It is not to be expected that in a governement of this kind Justice can be strictly administered, we saw indeed no signs of Punishments during our stay. Tupia however always insisted upon it that Theft was punishd with death and smaller crimes in proportion: in cases of Adultery the offenders were in the power of the offended party who if he takes them in the fact frequently kills them both. All punishments however were the business of the injurd party, who if superior
to him who commits the crime easily executes them by means of his more numerous attendants; equals seldom chuse to molest each other unless countenanced by their superior who assists them to defend their unjust acquisitions. The cheifs however to whom in reality all kinds of Property belong punish their dependants for crimes committed against each other, and the dependants of others if caught doing wrong within their districts.

End of Vol I

Continue to Vol II